

Workbook



Achievers

Margie Lemmens

B2



Richmond

Contents

STARTER A page 4

STARTER B page 6

UNIT 1 Brain power page 8

UNIT 2 Adventurers page 18

UNIT 3 Here and there, then and now page 28

REVIEW UNITS 1-3 page 38

VIDEO page 39

UNIT 4 Who's watching you? page 40

UNIT 5 Mirror, mirror page 50

UNIT 6 Techno-victims! page 60

REVIEW UNITS 4-6 page 70

VIDEO page 71

UNIT 7 Crocodile man page 72

UNIT 8 Getting away page 82

UNIT 9 Going for gold page 92

REVIEW UNITS 7-9 page 102

VIDEO page 103

REVIEW UNITS 1-9 page 104-112

WRITING REFERENCE page 113-121

PREPARE FOR CAMBRIDGE EXAMS

AND THE TOEFL JUNIOR® TEST page 122-139

VOCABULARY BANK page 140-143

STORIES page 144

IRREGULAR VERBS LIST page 145

 For audio, go to richmondell.com/achievers/studentaudio

Starter A

VOCABULARY

Materials

- 1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

cardboard china concrete cork metal

- Precious _____ like gold is used in jewellery.
- When we moved house, we packed all our belongings in _____ boxes.
- _____ is a natural material that is used to seal wine bottles, but also has many other uses.
- Most large-scale building projects such as dams, tunnels or bridges would be impossible without _____.
- _____ is a ceramic material made by heating clay in a special oven, called a kiln.

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct materials.

- We went hiking in the Alps and slept in a traditional cabin, entirely made of w _____.
- C _____ clothes are light and comfortable, which is why people like to wear them in summer.
- R _____ is used to make car and bicycle tyres.
- Thanks to interactive whiteboards, very few teachers have to write with c _____ these days.
- Michelangelo sculpted his masterpiece *David* from one solid block of m _____.

- 3 Match sentences 1-5 to the correct endings a-e.

- The Taj Mahal is built of marble, inlaid with ...
- Many skyscrapers have ...
- The Great Pyramid of Giza was built with approximately ...
- The 8,000 warriors of China's spectacular Terracotta Army were made of ...
- The façades of many of Gaudí's buildings are covered in ...

- 2.3 million limestone blocks.
- reddish clay which was then painted.
- a steel framework and glass walls.
- colourful ceramic tiles.
- many semi-precious stones.

Do you REMEMBER? Homes and other buildings

- 4 Circle the word that is different and explain why.

- cathedral / temple / palace / mosque
- hotel / hostel / tent / B & B
- farmhouse / ranch / block of flats / cabin
- castle / church / museum / mall

VOCABULARY

Activities

- 5 Circle the correct option.

- This year I'm planning _____ on holiday.
A getting active B to get action C to get active
- I've already _____ for horse-riding lessons.
A taken up B signed up C signed on
- I'm also _____ to try windsurfing.
A keen B interested C fanatical
- I found out there's a school ... beginners' lessons not far from here.
A managing B running C training
- And if I have time, I'll _____ on my French as well!
A study B improve C brush up

- 6 Complete the email with the correct words from the box.

for get how joined taken up up to

Great to hear what you're _____ this summer! I'm pretty busy myself. I've finally _____ the local gym and I'm going _____ long walks in the countryside too. I've always wanted to _____ to know the local wildlife better. Finally, I've _____ cooking because I want to learn _____ to make healthy food.

- 7 Complete the text with prepositions from the box.

There is one extra one you don't need to use.

on in for on along in

When my family and I go _____ holiday, we all like different things. I love lying _____ the beach and sunbathing. My parents prefer to walk _____ the beach, just looking at the waves. My sister's doing a course _____ painting. My brother's always running around; he's training _____ a marathon.

Do you REMEMBER? Holidays

- 8 Circle the correct words.

If you like action and variety, Indonesia is the perfect _____ **1** *destiny / destination*. You can go sightseeing in the crowded capital, Jakarta, and hunt for bargains in the _____ **2** *bustling / breathtaking* street markets. Or, you can _____ **3** *set off / head to* one of many natural parks that offer a wide range of exciting activities: climb a volcano and enjoy _____ **4** *iconic / panoramic* views from the top, chill out on _____ **5** *exotic / lively* sandy beaches, learn to scuba dive and marvel at the _____ **6** *spectacular / delicious* underwater scenery.

GRAMMAR

Present Tense Review

- 9 Complete the dialogue with the present simple or the present continuous of the verbs in brackets.

Claire: Hi Anna. I _____ you _____
(want) to meet up later?

Anna: I'd love to, but I can't. I _____ (study) for
my exams next week.

Claire: But it's Saturday! _____ you
_____ (not go out) tonight?

Anna: Tonight _____ (be) impossible. But how
about next weekend?

Claire: Sorry, Ben and I _____ (fly) to Paris on
Friday for a city break.

- 10 Write questions in the present simple or the present continuous. Use the words in brackets.

1 A: What _____ for lunch
today? (you / have)

B: My mum made me some ham and cheese sandwiches.

2 A: What _____? (parents / do)

B: My dad's a teacher and my mum's an accountant.

3 A: _____ to go out or stay in
tonight? (you / want)

B: I'd rather stay in; I'm a bit tired.

4 A: _____ at the moment? (Luke / work)

B: I'm not sure, but I know he had an interview last week.

5 A: How _____? (cooking course / go)

B: It's really good, I'm learning loads!

- 11 Complete the sentences with the present simple or present continuous of the verbs in the box.

manage not agree not bother spend stare

1 I don't mind the rain, it _____ me.

2 My brother and I _____ about anything.

3 How _____ you _____ to study with
all that noise?

4 My sister often _____ the weekend at her best
friend's house.

5 Do you know that guy who _____ at you?

- 12 Correct the errors in the sentences.

1 I think of joining a running club; I want to get fit.

2 The alarm is going off when you press a button.

3 Julie wears an incredibly smart dress today.

4 Look at that! It snows outside.

REMEMBER? Historic present

- 13 Complete the newspaper headlines with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

hit cut off sweep away blow away scare away

- 1 Freak wave _____ cliff walkers.
- 2 Floods _____ entire villages in the interior.
- 3 Storm _____ church roof.
- 4 Weather conditions _____ visitors.
- 5 Tornado _____ the coast of Cuba.

- 14 Read this extract from a book review of *The Book Thief*. Rewrite the verbs in *italics> in the historic present.*

At the start of the novel, we ¹ found _____
Liesel, her mother and little brother Werner on a
train. Liesel's mother ² was taking _____
the children to live with foster parents, to keep them
safe. Tragically, Werner ³ died _____
on the train and Liesel ⁴ had to _____
attend his burial in a cold, snowy graveyard. There, she ⁵ stole
_____ *The Grave Digger's Handbook* which ⁶ had
fallen _____ from a grave-digger's coat. It ⁷ became
_____ her first ever book and treasure, even though
she ⁸ couldn't read _____.



CHECK

- 15 Complete the article with the words in the box.

guided tour heritage historic magnificent
marble porcelain spectacular vast
wooden world famous

Historic Home Attracts Many Visitors



_____ Blenheim
Palace is one of Britain's great
_____ homes and _____

for being the birthplace of Sir Winston Churchill.
The Palace is considered a masterpiece of Baroque
architecture and every year thousands of visitors join
a free _____ of its _____
collection of furniture, portraits and tapestries.

Highlights include the splendid _____
doors that lead into the Great Hall, the beautiful
_____ displays in the China Ante Room
and the Long Library – a _____ room full
of valuable books and _____ statues.

The Palace has been a World _____ Site
since 1984.

Starter B

VOCABULARY

Multi-part verbs (1)

1 Complete the sentences with the correct multi-part verb.

- When climbing the pyramid, Cleo held on / brushed up on to the railing because she was afraid of falling.
- My cousin is looking for a job; he spends hours on the Internet brushing up on / checking out job advertisements.
- The last time we checked out / ate out was probably a month ago. We went to an Argentinian restaurant.
- My parents are taking me sightseeing in Italy in the Easter holidays, so I should give away / brush up on my Italian.
- He gave away / held on all his possessions to a charity and left for India.

2 Replace the underlined verbs with the correct form of the multi-part verbs in the box.

carry on give up grow up save up take up

- Audrey continued working until she finished the project.
- I'm thinking of leaving my weekend job.
- Children are often asked what they want to be when they become adults.
- My mum started doing Pilates two months ago.
- I'm putting some money in the bank every month to go inter-railing with my friends this summer.

3 Which words do not go with the multi-part verb?

- Call out: someone's name / a warning / a scream / for help
- Check in: your luggage / on-line / your email / to a hotel
- Calm down: a disaster / a crying infant / a nervous animal / an angry parent
- Give up: smoking / chocolate / your seat / your glasses
- Check out: the prices / a website / an exam / of your room

YOU REMEMBER? Multi-part verbs (2)

4 Complete the sentences with prepositions from the box.

off on out up with

- I'm terrified of the dentist, so I always put _____ going.
- After his wife's death, he brought _____ his three daughters alone.
- Tony's parents were furious when they found _____ he had failed all his exams.
- Excuse me, could I try these jeans _____?
- As a tour guide, I have to deal _____ all kinds of people.

VOCABULARY

Mind verbs

5 Circle the correct verb.

- My dad reminded / remembered me that I had a doctor's appointment.
- We're going on holiday to Cuba; just imagine / guess, I'll be lying under a palm tree sipping exotic cocktails.
- I'm sorry; I don't understand / know this math problem. Could you explain it again, please?
- I don't feel / believe he's telling the truth.
- My sister was on holiday in France when she realized / learnt she had won the prize.

6 Complete the definitions with the correct mind verbs.

- When you're far away from your family and friends you miss them.
- When you see or hear a person and know who they are, you recognize them.
- When you are concerned about something, you worry about it.
- When you ask yourself questions about a situation and try to work out what to do, you wonder about it.
- When you don't remember something, you forget it.

7 Complete the text with the words in the box.

believe decided realized recognize remembered understand

My uncle had always wanted to learn another language, so he decided to do a course in German. When he got to his first class, he couldn't understand how difficult it was. He didn't believe a word the teacher was saying and he couldn't remember any of the words in his book. He tried to study at home, but he never realized any of the vocabulary they'd seen in class. Soon, he understood that German was not for him and gave up!

YOU REMEMBER? Nouns and verbs

8 Complete the sentence with the correct noun form of the verb in brackets.

- He has a wide _____ of history and politics. (know)
- Choosing what to study at university is a very important _____ (decide)
- If you want to be a good writer, you have to use your _____ (imagine)
- Some people find it easy to learn new things because they have a good _____ (remember)
- I'm sorry; I didn't want to hurt your _____ (feel)

GRAMMAR

Comparatives and superlatives

9 Complete the description with the words in the box.

than as from to much in

I'm quite similar¹ _____ my twin sister; we both have brown hair and green eyes. The difference is that I'm a bit slimmer² _____ her, though not quite³ _____ tall. The two of us are very different⁴ _____ our elder brother. His hair is⁵ _____ lighter and his eyes are darker than ours, and he's definitely the funniest person⁶ _____ the family!

10 Rewrite the sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives in the box.

soft weak thick light common

- Roses aren't as rare as orchids.
- Rubies aren't as hard as diamonds.
- Glass isn't as strong as concrete.
- A woolen sweater isn't as thin as a silk shirt.
- Titanium isn't as heavy as steel.

11 Write comparative sentences about the facts below. Use the words in brackets.

- The Sahara (9,400,000 km²) is the third largest desert in the world; the fifth largest is the Gobi (1,300,000 km²). (much / small)
- In 2009, the average price for silver was \$432 per kg, while the average price for gold was \$30,645 per kg. (a lot / expensive)
- The height of the Torre Caja Madrid is 250 m, whereas that of the Torre de Cristal is 249 m. (a bit / tall)
- The Chinese city of Urumqi is about 2,500 km from the sea; the British city of Birmingham is between 120 and 130 km from the sea. (a lot / far)
- An African elephant weighs around 7,000 kg; a rhino can weigh over 3,000 kg. (much / heavy)

REMEMBER? Adverbs

12 Circle the correct words.

- My father works very *hardly* / *hard*.
- She was *wrong* / *wrongly* accused of the crime.
- Ladies and gentlemen, we will *shortly* / *short* be landing at Gatwick airport.
- He always drives too *fastly* / *fast*.
- Eco-friendly products are much more *widely* / *wide* available than before.
- My brother plays the guitar very *well* / *good*.

13 Rewrite the sentences with the adverb or adverbial phrase of the word in brackets.

- The weather has been very bad. (late)
- The teacher smiled at me when she gave back my exam. (friendly)
- I had kept the receipt of the dress. (lucky)
- The flight attendant repeated the safety instructions. (bored)
- American sitcoms like *Friends* are still popular with audiences all over the world. (huge)

CHECK

14 Complete the text with the words in the box.

absolutely checked out decided
fortunately held on incredibly
imagined saving up scary wondering

My boyfriend's birthday was coming up and I was ¹ _____ what to get him. As he loves architecture, I ² _____ to take him up the Shard, the 306 m glass pyramid next to London Bridge, which is the tallest building in Western Europe. I went online, ³ _____ the prices and started ⁴ _____ for the excursion. When the big day arrived, we stepped into a lift which zipped us up to the 68th floor. ⁵ _____ quickly, ⁶ _____, it wasn't as ⁷ _____ as I had ⁸ _____. When we got to the viewing platform, I ⁹ _____ to the telescopes to steady myself. My boyfriend was ¹⁰ _____ ecstatic and the views were amazing!



1 Brain power

READING

1 Read the text quickly. What type of text is it?

- A a story
- B an article
- C a review
- D a report

What a nightmare!



Picture this: you are late for an important exam, but the street is covered in ice and you keep slipping over. Or imagine your plane is leaving in an hour, but you can't find your passport. Your hands are sweating and your heart is pounding when, suddenly, you wake up and realize it was only a nightmare!

Everybody has dreams, but what exactly are they? While our body lies mostly still when we are sleeping, our brain remains active. During the night, we go through different sleep stages including Rapid Eye Movement (REM). In this stage, our eyes shoot around under our eyelids in response to motor signals from the brain, indicating activity in the form of dreams.

Scientists believe these dream images originate in the segment of the brain responsible for memory, awareness, consciousness and thought. Although the part of our brain that takes in new images is asleep, the part that interprets previously stored images is wide-awake. In other words, while we are asleep, our brain is busy making sense of all the impressions and experiences we gathered during the day.

So why do our dreams sometimes turn into nightmares? There are many different explanations, the most common ones being stress and trauma. Pressure at work or school, money worries or traumatic events can all bring on nightmares. Other factors include illness, taking medication or eating and drinking too much.

Is there anything we can do to prevent them? Establishing a healthy sleep routine with regular bed times, not doing exercise late at night, eating light dinners and cutting down on coffee, alcohol and other stimulants can certainly make a difference.

As a last resort, psychologists suggest that describing, drawing or even rewriting nightmares in a journal can help us understand and control the working of our brain better.

2 Read the text again and circle T (true) or F (false). Rewrite the false sentences so they are true.

- 1 Your heart tends to beat more slowly during a nightmare. T / F
- 2 During the night our body shuts down, but our mind keeps working. T / F
- 3 While we sleep, our brain interprets information from the day. T / F
- 4 Nightmares are mainly caused by physical problems. T / F
- 5 Relating your nightmares can help you overcome them. T / F
- 6 The article claims that nightmares are inevitable. T / F

3 Choose the correct answer. According to the author:

- A nightmares are frightening and should be taken seriously.
- B nightmares are the result of a mixture of mental and physical processes.
- C nightmares can easily be prevented.

WORD ZONE EXTRA

More expressions with make and do

4 Put the words in the correct column to form collocations. You can find some of them in the text.

a mess sense mistakes some reading
an exam progress a fool of yourself
exercise a difference a favour

Make	Do

5 Answer the questions with your own opinions.

- 1 Do you ever have nightmares and what are they about?
- 2 Which do you think is the best tip for dealing with nightmares and why?

VOCABULARY

Using the brain

- 6 Complete the sentences with words in the box. There are three extra words you do not need to use.

brain deadline drain long-term memory
passed process short-term strategy

- 1 If you hand in your essay too late, you miss the _____.
 - 2 Peter never thinks about the future – he only makes _____ plans.
 - 3 Steve only has to read a page once to retain all the information. He's got a photographic _____.
 - 4 I felt so relieved when I _____ the exam. I hadn't expected it!
 - 5 Recycling your notes regularly is the best learning _____.
 - 6 The phenomenon of talented people leaving their home country to go and work abroad is called brain _____.
- 7 Write your own sentences with the three words from exercise 1 which you did not use.
- 1 _____
 - 2 _____
 - 3 _____
- 8 Look at these sentences that contain a form of the word **learn**. What part of speech (noun, adjective, etc.) is it in each sentence?
- 1 Professor Marley was a man of great learning. _____
 - 2 This is a useful dictionary for learners of English. _____
 - 3 Some learned people are actually autodidacts. _____
 - 4 The expert spoke learnedly about his specialization for an hour. _____
- 9 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word **memory**.
- 1 I have some great _____ of my trip to Cuba.
 - 2 It was a very _____ occasion when our team won the league.
 - 3 Experts say we can only _____ about 10–12 new words a day.
 - 4 There is an impressive war _____ on top of the hill.

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Words connected to learning

- 10 Put the headings *Auditory*, *Tactile* and *Visual* in the correct places in the text.

Learning styles

Not everybody learns in the same way. Different learners prefer different learning styles. According to experts, these can be divided into three main types:

A _____

These students like to receive spoken information in the form of lectures, discussions, audio recordings or podcasts. When studying, they like to read aloud and record themselves.

B _____

These students prefer to see information presented in books, articles, web pages, images or videos. They like teachers to use PowerPoint presentations or white boards. They tend to take lots of notes, use highlighters and prepare charts as study-aids.

C _____

These students prefer information that is transmitted in a 'hands-on', practical way, such as in laboratories, workshops or participatory classes. They like to touch, hold and manipulate the subject matter.



- 11 Match the descriptions to the appropriate learning style in the text.

These students _____

- 1 enjoy finding out information by doing experiments. _____
- 2 prefer to revise by re-reading their notes. _____
- 3 study by reading aloud and repeating. _____
- 4 absorb information best when it's presented in drawings. _____
- 5 like to brush up on their language skills by listening to CDs. _____
- 6 easily pick up new words they have heard in conversations. _____

- 12 Match the words in bold from exercise 11 to the definitions.

- 1 refresh or improve your knowledge _____
- 2 try and learn _____
- 3 acquire knowledge in an informal way _____
- 4 fully understand what you have learnt _____
- 5 discover _____
- 6 study again before an exam. _____

- 13 What type of learner are you? How do you know?

1 Circle the most suitable words.

- 1 You **can't** / **shouldn't** smoke in public buildings.
- 2 In our school we **have to** / **ought to** wear a uniform.
- 3 I **should** / **need to** leave a little earlier today. I have a dental appointment.
- 4 You **can** / **have to** travel by train or by bus.
- 5 You **don't have to** / **mustn't** shout! My little brother's asleep.
- 6 If you want to lose weight, you **can** / **should** do more exercise.

2 Match the sentences from exercise 1 to functions A-E.

- A obligation _____
 B necessity _____
 C recommendation _____
 D prohibition _____ / _____
 E possibility _____

3 Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

- 1 After school I often have to _____.
- 2 In class we can _____, but we can't _____.
- 3 At weekends I don't have to _____.
- 4 If I want to improve my English, I should _____.
- 5 If I don't want to make my parents angry, I mustn't _____.

4 Rewrite the sentences so they have a similar meaning. Use **can** / **should** / **need to** / **have to** / **must** / **ought to**, in the affirmative or negative.

- 1 It's a bad idea to go out late the night before an exam.
You _____.
- 2 It's not necessary for us to wear a uniform.
We _____.
- 3 It's obligatory for bikers to put on a helmet.
Bikers _____.
- 4 If you are under 18, you are not allowed to drive.
If you are under 18, you _____.
- 5 I advise you to learn some Japanese before you go there on holiday.
You _____.
- 6 It's optional for students to choose a second language.
Students _____.

5 Complete the advert with appropriate modal verbs. The verbs can be affirmative (+) or negative (-).

Would you like to improve your English in a fun way?

Then join our language exchange programme!



All members ¹ _____ (+) participate in weekly activities such as discussions, debates or conversations. For other activities, such as film nights or monthly book clubs, you ² _____ (+) sign up in advance. To register, you ³ _____ (+) fill in an application form online and pay a fee of 20 euros. You ⁴ _____ (-) attach a photo. During activities, participants ⁵ _____ (-) speak anything but English. If you want to make the most out of your membership, we recommend that you ⁶ _____ (+) attend at least two activities a month. Don't worry if you ⁷ _____ (-) speak English fluently yet – we have members of all levels. If you're interested, you ⁸ _____ (+) come to an introductory meeting on Thursday 15 May. You ⁹ _____ (-) register beforehand.

6 Look at these extracts from emails that students wrote to an online student magazine. What advice would you give them?

I'm a 16 year-old-boy and I frequently suffer from nightmares. As a result, I feel exhausted the next day and I can't pay attention in class. Is there anything I can do to stop this?

Reply: First of all, you shouldn't _____.

I've just failed an important exam again! As it is, I study five hours a day and most of the weekend. I only take a break to play football with my friends. Do you think I should give it up?

Reply: Nobody can study all day, so you needn't _____.

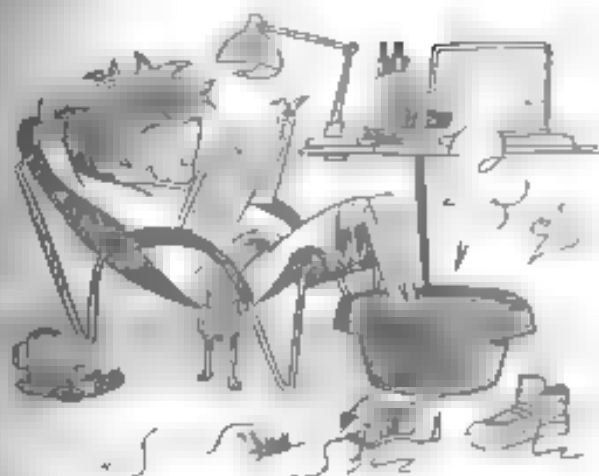
I'm hopeless at Languages! I don't understand grammar and I can't stand reading. What can I do to improve?

Reply: If you don't like reading, you can also _____.

I think I must have a really bad memory. No matter how often I read a text, I don't seem to remember anything. How can I improve?

Reply: If reading doesn't work for you, you should _____.

LISTENING



- 1 You are going to listen to five people talking about their method of studying. Before you listen, match the words from the recording to the definitions.

- 1 yaw
- 2 yaw
- 3 soak
- 4 drawback
- 5 ad
- 6 stroke
- 7 nap
- 8 stuffy

- A disadvantage
- B unusual or strange
- C stop doing something
- D surface created at the top of your legs when you are sitting
- E open your mouth wide, usually because you are tired
- F move your hand gently over something
- G oppressive, difficult to breathe in
- H lie in the water for a period of time

- 2 Listen and answer the questions.

- 1 Who advised Charlie to change her habits?
- 2 What does Mohammed need?
- 3 Where does Lily study?
- 4 What is Daniel's problem?
- 5 What does Karla like doing when she's studying?

- 3 Listen again and match the five speakers to statements A-F. There is one extra letter you do not need to use.

- 1 Charlie
- 2 Mohammed
- 3 Lily
- 4 Daniel
- 5 Karla

- A I'm not disturbed by noise
- B My parents' gift helped me focus on my studies
- C My new study routine is not as much fun as my previous one
- D It's a great way to remember things
- E My mother made me change the way I studied
- F Coffee doesn't have any effect on me

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

- 4 Answer the questions.

- 1 What has Charlie given up doing?
- 2 How does Mohammed try to stay awake?
- 3 What's a disadvantage of Lily's way of studying?
- 4 Who is M. sty?
- 5 How does Daniel manage to relax?
- 6 Why does Karla hate studying in the library?

- 5 Write these sentences in your language.

- 1 It sometimes gets pretty boring
- 2 I used to drive my parents mad
- 3 Music in the background doesn't bother me

READING

- 1 Look at the examples of languages in the extract. Do you know which films they come from? Match the languages to the sample sentences and the translations.

Do you speak Klingon ... or Na'vi?



English	Klingon	Na'vi
Excuse me	ch'og'ch'og'ch'og'	Witla! Hup'et'et'et'
Name	q'el'et'et'et'	Kong'et'et'et'
Thank you	z'et'et'et'	W'et'et'et'
Excuse me	z'et'et'et'	W'et'et'et'

Did you recognize any of the sentences? _____

The latter are epic stories set in an imaginary world, inhabited by non-human races, such as elves and dwarves, and magical creatures like dragons and monsters. Or you might be a keen linguist with a special interest in conlangs, which is short for constructed languages. These are fictional languages created by academics and aficionados with a special purpose, often a book or film, in mind.

In the 1970s, in the wake of the first successful moon landing, an ever-increasing number of science fiction films started appearing in the cinema. To give credence to the fictional worlds they were creating, film-makers thought that the creatures populating them should have their own languages.

Klingon, the language of the humanoid warriors and arch-enemies of the USS Enterprise in *Star Trek*, was the first Hollywood conlang to attain world fame. Created by American linguist Marc Okrand, Klingon became a cult language, though not many fans speak it fluently.

The release of *The Lord of the Rings* trilogy, based on the works of J.R.R. Tolkien, was a new height in the creation of epic fantasy films and a boost to the popularity of conlangs.

For him, these invented languages were vital to the extent that he made up his stories to provide a setting for them, rather than vice versa.

When James Cameron's film *Avatar* premiered in 2009, it was praised by critics for its outstanding visual effects and became an instant box office hit. Moreover, it put the film's protagonists, the Na'vi, the three-metre tall, blue-striped, indigenous inhabitants of the moon Pandora, into the spotlight.

After the film's release, Cameron continued expanding Na'vi vocabulary and the language has attracted a considerable following and an increasing community of learners.

You may wonder why serious academics create fictional languages and why fans bother to learn languages that aren't used in real life.

As you feel more motivated, the learning process becomes easier. Moreover, learning a constructed language also helps your understanding of other languages, how they are structured and the way words are built. Besides, you can fine-tune your listening skills and improve your pronunciation by learning new sounds. Lastly, speaking another language enables you to think in a different way and broadens your mind. So, why not take up Elvish?

GLOSSARY

aficionado	enthusiast, fan
in the wake of	a phenomenon that is the direct result or consequence of another
boost	encouragement, increase, or promotion
upsurge	a rise or increase
bother	make the effort or take the trouble to do something
fine-tune	make small changes in order to improve something

2 Read the text quickly and choose the best summary.

- A Conlangs are especially created for sci-fi and fantasy movies, although they aren't used anywhere else.
- B The popularity of conlangs is closely linked to sci-fi and fantasy movies and they attract a following of linguists and non-specialists.
- C Conlangs are created by linguists who believe that they can help improve language learning skills.

3 Read the text again and complete the gaps with sentences A-G. There is one extra sentence you do not need to use.

- A The success of *The Lord of the Rings* led to an upsurge in the popularity of the genre.
- B After all, audiences could not be expected to believe that everyone in the galaxy spoke English.
- C Tolkien, a philologist specialized in ancient Germanic languages, was the creator of various constructed languages, such as the Elvish languages spoken in Middle-earth.
- D If you did, you're probably a great fan of sci-fi or high fantasy films.
- E In fact, Tolkien was so fluent in Elvish that he wrote several poems and essays in the language.
- F However, evidence suggests that studying a language for your own enjoyment has several benefits.
- G Their eponymous language was developed by Paul Frommer, an American doctor in linguistics.

4 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 In paragraph 1, what do we learn about conlangs?
 - A They are all created by linguists and academics.
 - B They can be developed especially for works of fiction.
 - C They are usually spoken by dragons and monsters.
- 2 Why did film-makers become interested in conlangs?
 - A They wanted to make their films more authentic.
 - B They didn't think that aliens could speak English.
 - C Audiences had expressed an interest in them.
- 3 In paragraph 4, what is said about the Na'vi language?
 - A It's spoken by people due to its easy vocabulary.
 - B It was largely held responsible for *Avatar*'s success.
 - C Its development didn't stop upon the film's completion.
- 4 Which advantage of learning a constructed language is mentioned in paragraph 5?
 - A Most conlangs have similar grammatical structures to normal languages.
 - B Speaking a conlang allows you to communicate with other high fantasy fans.
 - C Studying a language you're really into facilitates the understanding of others.

VOCABULARY

Adjectives from verbs.

-ing, -ed

5 Circle the correct words to complete the questions. Then write answers about you.

- 1 Who is the most annoying / annoyed person you know and why?
- 2 When was the last time you felt depressing / depressed and why?
- 3 Do you think studying is boring / tired?
- 4 When were you last moving / moved by a film?
- 5 What is the most uplifting / uplifted song you know?

6 Complete the sentences with the correct adjective form of the words in brackets.

- 1 The view over the mountains was really _____ (impress)
- 2 Cockroaches are the most _____ (repulse) animals I know.
- 3 Doing exams can be really _____ (stress)

7 Look back at Verb Zone in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 1.

8 Rewrite the sentences with multi-part verbs from exercise 7.

- 1 Go on the internet and search for the time the last train leaves.
Go on the internet _____
- 2 In the final class, I'll give you back the exams and show you your mistakes.
In the final class, I'll give you back the exams and _____
- 3 My cousin doesn't earn much, but he has enough to live on.
My cousin doesn't earn much, but he has enough _____
- 4 Our French teacher kept writing more and more words on the board, until we couldn't fully understand them any more.
Our French teacher kept writing more and more words on the board, until we couldn't _____
- 5 We need to consider all options carefully before buying a house. It's a very important decision.
We need to _____



1 Circle the correct form of the verbs to complete the dialogue.

N is: How's your dad feeling these days, Claire?

Claire: Much better, thanks. For a start, he's stopped
'to smoke / smoking. And he's also managing
'drink ng / to drink less coffee. He used to 'have /
having at least six cups a day, but now he's down
to two.

N is: That's good. And what about your sister Maya?
Wasn't she worried about 'losing / to lose her job?

Claire: Yes, she was and unfortunately she did. She's
having a bit of a break at the moment, but she
needs 'to start / starting looking for a new job
pretty soon. She can't afford 'staying / to stay at
home doing nothing for long.

N is: Would you like me 'having / to have a word with
my boss? She mentioned the possibility of hiring
someone else.

Claire: I'm sure Maya would love 'to work / working at
your school. I'll tell her 'getting / to get in touch
with you.

2 Use the words to write questions, making the necessary changes.

1 Which tasks / around the house / you / avoid / do?

2 What / you / look forward to / at the moment?

3 What kind of things / your parents / encourage / you / do?

4 What kind of things / your parents / warn / you / not / do?

5 What, be / the most difficult thing / you / manage /
achieve / in life so far?

6 you / plan / continue / study English / next year?

3 Answer the questions in exercise 2 with your own opinions.

1

2

3

4

5

6

4 Tick the correct sentences and change the ones that are incorrect.

1 When I first came to the UK, I wasn't used to drive on the left.

2 I'm looking forward to go on holiday next month.

3 The thieves pretended to be security guards in order to get into the building.

4 I want that my friends celebrate my birthday with me.

5 When he was a child, my younger brother didn't use to eat vegetables, but now he does.

6 I would prefer taking oral exams, rather than written ones.

7 I'm pleased meeting you.

5 Complete the sentences with your own ideas. Use a gerund or to + infinitive each time.

1 When I was younger, I really wanted

2 The teacher allowed us

3 My brother / sister apologized for

4 When my grandfather was young, he used to

5 I enjoy _____ but can't stand _____

6 I can never get used to

7 I'm quite good at _____ but hopeless at _____

8 Our coach forced us _____

EXTRA CHALLENGE

Read the text and answer the questions. Circle True (T) or False (F).

- 1 Simonides spent a long time developing his method. T/F
- 2 The nobleman thought his poem was very bad. T/F
- 3 Simonides was saved by Castor and Pollux. T/F
- 4 The loci method associates numbers and words. T/F

The origin of memory training

The Greek poet Simonides, who lived some 2,500 years ago, is known as The Father of Memory Training.

Simonides stumbled upon his method, which is called loci (the Latin word for places), after he was involved in a tragic accident. He had been invited to a banquet to recite a poem in honour of the host, a nobleman from Thessaly. The guests praised the host but also dedicated part of the poem to the twin gods Castor and Pollux. The angry nobleman told him he would only pay half the agreed fee. Simonides suggested that he should get the rest from those two gods he was so fond of. Shortly after that, Simonides was

thrown. He supposed that he must have been the one to

He had only just left the hall when the roof collapsed, killing everyone inside. The bodies were crushed so badly that it was impossible to recognize them. It was then that Simonides realized that he could remember where all the guests had been sitting. And so, on the basis of Simonides' visual map, they were able to identify the victims.

After the incident, Simonides started reflecting on what had happened and he understood that if he associated names, words or numbers with a specific place, he would be able to remember them more easily. In this way, the method of loci was born.



Can you draw a plan of your classroom from memory with all your classmates in the right places?

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

- 1 How much does the average adult human brain weigh?
- 2 What are the English names of the four suits in a standard pack of playing cards?
- 3 Which pop star born in Minneapolis, USA, had epilepsy as a child?
- 4 If you are quadrilingual, how many languages can you speak?
- 5 What adjective is often used to describe an earworm?
- 6 How short is the human short-term memory: seconds, minutes or hours?

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. What do you think Greg is going to say? (Clue: Where is Ipanema beach?)



INTERACTION

Succeeding in an interview

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say ...

- when you receive some good news?
- when you want someone to give you more information?
- when you completely agree with someone else?



- 2 Diana has applied for a grant to do a summer course in France. Complete the interview with the Principal of her school, using expressions in the box. Listen and check.

that's exactly what I think. Can you tell me more about that? Well, I guess I am a little shy. I'm so pleased to hear that. What can I say? That sounds very interesting. Do you want to elaborate on that? That's right. Yes, you could say that.

Principal: Ah Diana, good morning. Do come in and sit down.
Diana: Good morning Ms Jones.

Principal: So, your French teacher tells me that you'd like to go to Dijon this summer.

Diana: I'm really into French but, although I did myself justice in the written exams, I think I need to improve my oral skills.

Principal: Hmm. I can see here that your written exam results were excellent, but your oral exam was a little disappointing. I wonder why.

Diana: I can't speak freely and I'm also worried about my pronunciation. That's why I think it would be really useful to go to France.

Principal: Yes, your teacher also mentioned that you write stories. Tell me more about that.

Diana: I've always loved literature, especially Austen and Dickens, but for the moment I prefer to keep my own stories short – at least until I get more practice.

Principal: Your teacher also said that you were thinking of studying French at college.

Diana: Well, I definitely want to study something related to language, but I haven't decided yet. Perhaps a combined degree in Modern Languages?

Principal: Marvellous. I'm sure you'll do very well. Now, as for this place on the French course, we have decided to accept your application. Our school is over the moon to have such an outstanding candidate.

Diana: Thank you so much Ms Jones.

- 3 Find expressions in the dialogue that mean

- to do something to the best of your knowledge and ability
- to be successful at what you do
- to really like something
- to be very pleased

- 4 Match the sentences to the expressions.

- I think this article is really boring.
- You shouldn't have told Jen her hair looked better before. She was so pleased with her new cut.
- We've been discussing this for hours. We really need to take a decision now.
- Have you heard? Paul's failed his driving test again!
- I don't know how Jason can write his essays so fast.
- I think all exams should be scrapped.
- I'm not sure I'm with you a hundred per cent. I think we need some tests to check our progress.
- I'm totally with you on that. We need to get down to business.
- You're absolutely right. I think we need to jazz it up a bit.
- Yeah, he just churns them out by the dozen, without any problems.
- Oh dear! Have I put my foot in it again?
- What a shame!

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 5 Revise the Express Yourself box on page 16 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

Making a formal recommendation



1 Choose the correct answers.

1 The recommendation / suggestion would be

- A asking individual students about their preference
- B asking individual students about their preference
- C asking individual students about their preference.

2 We suggest / recommend

- A students should using a variety of techniques.
- B students to use a variety of techniques.
- C that students use a variety of techniques.

3 We suggest / recommend

- A adapting techniques to students.
- B to adapt techniques to students
- C you to adapt techniques to students.

2 Complete the report with the headings. There is one extra heading you do not need to use.

Storytelling Future uses Mind games
 Mnemonics Visual imagery Improving memory

1 The first part of the report is to provide information about the experiments. It is important that the results of the experiments are reported accurately and evaluated how well they were.

2 The second part of the report is to provide information about the results of the experiments. It is important that the results of the experiments are reported accurately and evaluated how well they were.

3 The third part of the report is to provide information about the results of the experiments. It is important that the results of the experiments are reported accurately and evaluated how well they were.

4 Finally, the third group were asked to remember a series of dates by allocating a letter of the alphabet to each number and associating those letters with an important date. Again, the results of the experiments are reported accurately and evaluated how well they were.

5 Overall, students thought it was worth participate in the experiments. Students with visual learning styles, creative students, or those with special educational needs seemed to benefit most. For these reasons, we suggest to carry on with the experiments, but adapting them each time to the target students.

3 Correct the four mistakes in the report in the use of gerunds and infinitives.

Paragraph 2: _____

Paragraph 3: _____

Paragraph 5: _____

4 Look at the Writing Reference on page 113. Imagine you participated in a memory training experiment. You can use any of the examples on this page or others from this unit. Write a report about your experience and follow the instructions.

1 Use the report on this page as a model

2 Give your report a title and then follow this plan

Paragraph 1 – introduce your report

Paragraph 2 – explain the memory training method you tried

Paragraph 3 – explain what you liked / didn't like about it.

Paragraph 4 – say if you would recommend it to other students

Reminder

- Give a reason for why you liked / didn't like something
- Use language for making a formal recommendation

READING

- 1 Read the text quickly. What do the people have in common?

- A They have all had to escape from their country.
- B They are all experiencing life in another country.
- C They have all emigrated for economic reasons.

They've come a long way!



Kuru:

I come from a small Amazonian tribe in the Brazilian rainforest. One day, a film crew came to shoot a documentary. When they saw how interested I was in their equipment,

they put me in touch with an NGO that runs training programmes for indigenous people. I got a grant to study English and technology in the US. With the knowledge I gain here, I can return home and help our tribe survive in the modern world.

So far, the experience has been amazing: the people, the cities, my studies. The hardest things for me to get used to are the cold weather in winter and all the greasy fast food.



Zainab:

I was terrified when my husband told me he had arranged for me to join him in the UK. I had never left our village, let alone Pakistan! When I arrived at Heathrow airport, he was waiting for me. We were

nervous because we hadn't seen each other since he had left for England on his own.

Fortunately, I could speak some English, so I was able to help out at my husband's restaurant. I still find it difficult to live in such a wet climate, and without my family, but I'm getting there.



Eric:

Football is very important in my country, and the Cameroon national team is one of the best in Africa. So, like most kids, I used to play football in the street with my friends.

One day a group of Spanish talent scouts came and watched us play. They must have liked what they saw because they invited me to train in Spain. I couldn't believe it! I felt like my hero and compatriot, Samuel Eto'o, who had made it big in Barcelona. And thankfully, I'm not alone here. My elder brother is here too, to look after me.

- 2 Read the texts again and answer the questions about the people.

- 1 Who plans to return home in the future?
- 2 Who has someone to care for them?
- 3 Who was frightened about going to the new country?
- 4 Who doesn't mention anything negative about life in the new country?
- 5 Who was helped by a charity?
- 6 Who wasn't discovered by anyone?

- 3 Answer the questions.

- 1 Why did the film crew put Kuru in touch with the NGO?
- 2 What are Kuru's hopes for the future?
- 3 Why were Zainab and her husband nervous?
- 4 What are the hardest aspects of her Zainab's life?
- 5 How was Eric discovered?
- 6 What is Eric's connection with Samuel Eto'o?



More expressions that mean 'alone'

- 4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. You can use some of the words more than once and sometimes there is more than one option.

alone lonely single-handed sole solitary

- 1 In _____ sailing, there's only one crew member on board.
- 2 The boy was the _____ survivor of the tragic accident.
- 3 I sometimes like to stay home _____ - it helps me think.
- 4 My sister felt very _____ when she was away because she missed her friends and family.

- 5 Answer the question with your own opinion.

Would you ever consider going abroad to study or work? Why / Why not?

- 1 Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

An unlucky traveller

At the age of 55, Daniel

(already retire) from his stressful job as a bank manager and he

in Vietnam. He

dreamt of going there. He

(get on) very well with his students, and some of them

_____ (invite) him to their village

The journey was long and hot, and on the way back Daniel

_____ (collapse), and his students

take him to hospital

where doctors

he

attack. Then, while he

(cross) the street to get a taxi home, a motorbike

_____ (hit) him, and Daniel

_____ (go) straight back to

hospital, where he

another week. But worst of all, when he

_____ (finally leave) hospital

and

language school

because he

classes. Luckily, however, he

(soon get) a better job there and is now enjoying his new life



(find) work as a French teacher
always

3 The hikers got lost because

4 Marie fell asleep with a big smile on her face because

5 He was given a medal because

6 Federico got really sunburnt because

- 4 Combine the sentences, using the word in brackets to link them.

1 It was bitterly cold. They went for a walk. (although)

2 She lost the first few games. She remained positive. (in spite of)

3 He didn't get the promotion. He had worked hard. (even though)

4 She suffered a lot of setbacks. She managed to finish the race. (despite)

5 Juan was afraid of heights. His mother took him to the Eiffel Tower. (in spite of)

- 5 Rewrite the sentences in two different ways, using the sentence beginnings given.

1 Richard is highly qualified, but he didn't get the job.
Despite his _____
Despite being _____

2 Although Amelie was tired, she couldn't sleep.
In spite of her _____
in spite of being _____

3 Even though Sami got injured, he was able to get back to the base camp.
Despite getting _____
Despite his _____

4 They planned the expedition carefully, but a lot of things went wrong.
In spite of their _____
in spite of planning _____

- 6 Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

1 Although my Maths teacher is very patient,

2 The team _____, in spite of
all their training

3 Despite not having much money, my friends and I

4 Even though I used lots of sun cream

- 2 Correct the sentences.

1 Carl jogged in the park when a dog bit him

2 My horse was stumbling over a rock when I was galloping across the fields

3 While we saw many exotic animals, we were trekking through the jungle

4 Anne was spraining her ankle when she ran the race

5 My mother was having dinner while the phone rang

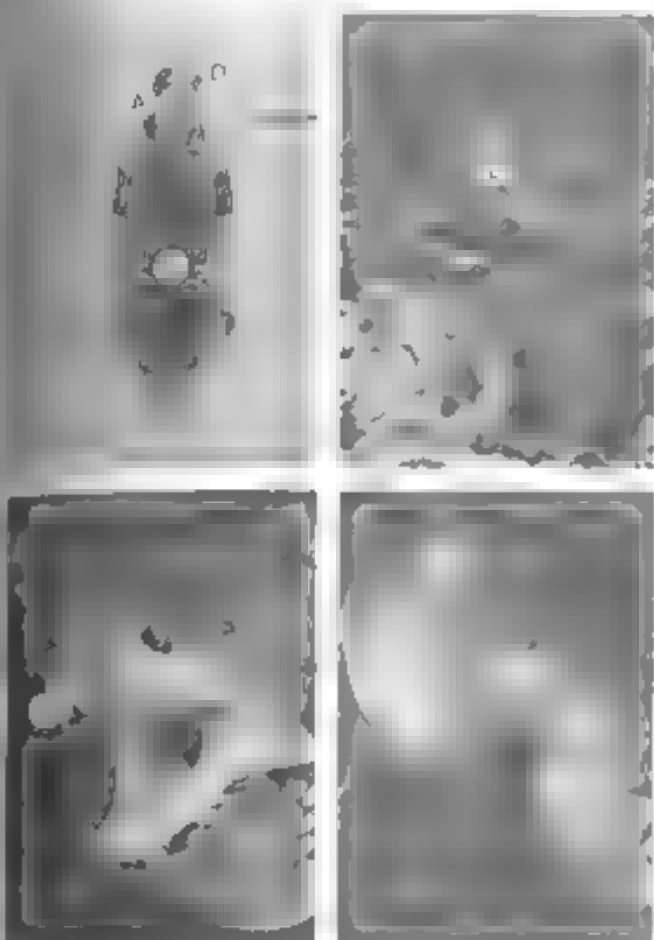
- 3 Complete the sentences with your own explanations in the past perfect.

1 Susanna was late for class because

2 The building was evacuated because

STENING

1 Label the photos with the correct words from the box



reef dive mask fangs flippers
jellyfish snorkel wetsuit

A
B
C
D
E
F
G

2 You are going to listen to an instructor talking to a group of people about to go snorkelling in Indonesia. Before you listen, tick the topics you think the instructor will mention. Then listen and check.

boats _ snakes _
clothes _ storms _
glasses _ turtles _

3 Listen again and complete the summary of the recording with the word(s) you hear.

- The instructor recommends using lots of _____
- He says that if you don't have a T-shirt or shorts to wear diving, you can hire a _____
- For short-sighted and long-sighted people there are _____ dive masks
- The tourists are warned that they mustn't _____ the coral
- The instructor says it's OK to swim along with the turtles if you keep _____
- On their excursion, they will see many _____ fish
- They should be careful of jellyfish because they can give you a _____
- There may also be some _____ snakes
- Divers who are frightened of snakes are told not to _____

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

4 Answer the questions.

- Why does the instructor recommend wearing a T-shirt and shorts?
- What warnings does he suggest he offer that come in all sizes?
- What do contact lens wearers normally do?
- What is said about turtles? What are they like?
- Why are sea snakes unlikely to bite you?
- What might happen if you look at a sea snake directly?

5 Write these sentences in your language.

- What's more, you can really hurt yourself as the coral's very sharp.
- My colleagues and I will be on the lookout and will warn you if we see any _____
- Well folks, that's about it. Let's get started

READING

1 Read the text quickly and look at the map. Write down the different stages of Enaiat's journey, as well as the means of transport he had to use.

- 1 From Afghanistan to _____ by _____
and by _____
2 From _____ to _____ by _____



In the sea there are crocodiles

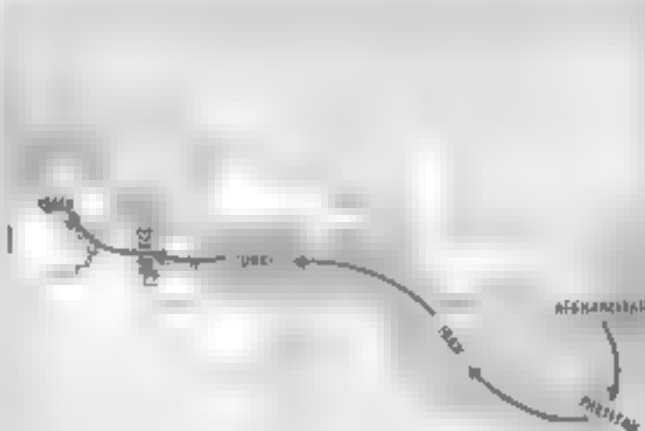
We normally think of adventurers as intrepid explorers, travelling to exotic, faraway lands. This is the story of another kind of adventurer – a young boy making his way on his own, from one of those distant lands to the West.

Enaiatullah Akhbar was only ten years old when he woke up to find himself all alone in Quetta, Pakistan. His mother had taken him there from his native Afghanistan, first on foot and then by lorry, to keep him safe from the Taliban. This was because his family were Hazaras, a people of Mongolian ancestry with a long history of persecution and ill treatment by Afghan rulers.

And so his odyssey started. With his mother having returned to their village to look after his younger siblings, Enaiat was left to fend for himself in Pakistan. He survived doing odd jobs at a hostel and later selling cigarettes and snacks in the street.

Once he'd saved up enough money, he paid a people trafficker to take him to Iran, squashed in the back of a pick-up truck, lured by the prospect of better-paid work. For the next 3 years Enaiat worked on building sites and factories, spurred on by a new dream: to get to Turkey and

- 3 From _____ to _____ by _____
and by _____
4 From _____ to _____ by _____
5 From _____ to _____ by _____



then Europe. This meant that he had to turn to the people traffickers again.

The journey was an absolute nightmare. They took a bus to the border, and then walked. After a gruelling 26-day trek across icy mountains, without proper shoes, 65 of the original 77 migrants stumbled into Turkey, 12 had perished along the way. The survivors were squeezed into a box underneath a lorry for three days, until they got to Istanbul. From Turkey, Enaiat crossed over to Greece in an inflatable dinghy. There were four of them when they set out, but one of the boys drowned. With the help of some Greeks, Enaiat got to Athens by bus and ferry, where he spent two relatively prosperous months working as an illegal labourer during the build-up to the 2004 Olympics. Then the work dried up and he needed to move on.

After many failed attempts, Enaiat sneaked on board a cargo ship and hid in a container. He didn't know it then, but the ship would take him to Italy, where he had a contact – a young man from his village. His friend first put him in touch with the Office for Foreign Minors and later with an Italian family who took him in.

Supported by his Italian adoptive family, Enaiat eventually succeeded in legalizing his situation. He was finally recognized as a political refugee and granted asylum. He even managed to get in touch with his mother.

Enaiat's moving story is told by Italian journalist Fabio Geda, and based on the conversations he had with the young man.

GLOSSARY

- fend for yourself** to take care of yourself without depending on anyone
lure to attract
be spurred on by to be motivated or encouraged by
dinghy a small inflatable boat made of rubber or synthetic material
grant asylum to give protection to and allow someone to reside legally in a country

- 2 Read the text again. Which of these adjectives would you use to describe Enaiat? You can choose more than one

unlucky independent lucky
poor confident resourceful spoilt stubborn

- 3 Choose the correct answers.

1 What does the author say about the traditional view of adventurers?

- A They are daring people from exotic countries.
B They are mostly young people.
C They are brave people who explore distant countries.
D They tend to travel by themselves.

2 Enaiat left Afghanistan because

- A he wanted to find work to help his mother
B his people were oppressed there
C his mother had no time to look after him
D he had offended the Taliban

3 Enaiat decided to go to Iran because

- A it was on the way to Turkey
B he wanted to work in a factory
C he had found a job there.
D people had told him about jobs there

4 What do we learn about the journey to Turkey?

- A Nearly one-sixth of the migrants died on the way.
B Only twenty per cent of the migrants made it to Turkey.
C He got there by lorry.
D There were very few survivors.

5 What did Enaiat do in Greece?

- A He helped some Greeks get to Athens.
B He earned quite good money for a couple of months.
C He went to the Olympics.
D He found he had some rich relatives.

6 What do we learn about Enaiat's voyage to Italy?

- A He planned to go to Italy because he had a friend there.
B He had always dreamt of going there.
C He happened to pick a ship that was going there.
D He had been invited by an Italian family.

- 4 How do these people relate to Enaiat's story?

- 1 His mother
2 People traffickers
3 Some Greek people
4 His friend in Italy
5 Fabio Geda

VOCABULARY

Common abstract nouns & related words

- 5 Look at the picture and circle the correct options.



- 6 Complete the questions with the correct forms of the words in brackets and then answer them.

- 1 Do you prefer the _____ (hot) of summer, or the _____ (cold) of winter?
2 Can you describe what your _____ (strong) are?
3 Which is better, your sense of _____ (taste), or your sense of _____ (smell)?
4 What do you think is the average _____ (weigh) of your school bag?
5 Are you a member of any _____ (young) clubs or organisations?
6 How many _____ (long) of a 50-metre pool can you swim?

- 7 Look back at Verb Zone in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 2.

- 8 Complete the sentences with multi-part verbs from exercise 7. Put the verbs in the correct form.

- 1 He _____ the formidable task of translating the complete works of Shakespeare into Japanese.
2 While cycling, she found it very difficult _____ the insects buzzing around her head.
3 We _____ on our waking holiday at dawn, when the weather was still cool.
4 I find that having a language exchange with a foreign student is the best way _____ my German.
5 She _____ her dream of being the first teenager to swim solo across the Pacific Ocean. It was just too difficult.

1 Circle the correct words.

- When Tina arrived at the party, her friends **had been going** / had gone
- I **had written** / had been writing emails for hours when my computer crashed
- David couldn't do the shopping because he **had been leaving** / had left his wallet at home
- Masami and Akiko **had been fighting** / had fought all morning until their mother told them to stop
- We **had stood** / had been standing in the queue for ages before we got to the ticket window
- After the teacher **had left** / had been leaving, the pupils carried on with their homework

2 Write complete sentences from the prompts, using the past perfect continuous and past simple.

- We / only / play tennis / for half an hour / when / start / rain
- Natasha / be / exhausted / because / she / study / all day
- It / rain / for weeks / when / the river / flood
- Nellie / try / fix / her computer / herself / for hours / but / she / not be able to
- My uncle / only / work / in the company / for 3 months / when / he / get / a promotion
- Mymona / come home / furious / because / she / argue / with her boss / all day

3 Write explanations for these situations, using the past perfect continuous.

- Peter was standing in the kitchen, crying.
Peter was crying because _____
- Ben and Alec were sweating profusely when they got back _____
- My sister overslept on Monday morning _____
- Our dog came running into the kitchen, with scratches on its face _____
- Allie and Maria were bright red when they came back from the swimming pool _____
- Bob looked extremely happy when he put down the phone _____

4 Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

In 1963, when Dervla Murphy was 31, she _____

_____ (leave) her native Ireland for India. She _____

_____ (plan) this trip ever since her tenth birthday, when her parents _____

_____ give her a bicycle and an atlas. It was no ordinary holiday, because Dervla _____ (intend) to cycle all the way.

Throughout her journey, she had many adventures and mishaps. She _____ (endure) extremes of heat and cold, _____ (suffer) all

kinds of discomfort and, on many occasions, _____

_____ (face) personal danger. While she _____

_____ (cross) the former Yugoslavia, she _____ (defend) herself against

a pack of wolves that _____

(watch) her, and _____ (wait) to

attack. And she _____ (break) three ribs when an angry bull _____

_____ (fall) on her while she _____

_____ (fight) with another man on an Afghan bus.

Always short of food, she often nearly _____

_____ (starve). Yet she never _____

_____ (think) of giving up.

5 Complete the text with verbs in the box in the correct tense.

arrive continue cover cycle help out
keep return stay take write

When she eventually _____

India, she _____ for 175 days

and she _____ a distance of over

10,000 km. She _____ in India for

about a year. While she _____ at

a refugee camp in Dharamsala, she _____

_____ an interest in the cause of Tibetan refugees.

Finally, she _____ home, where she _____ her first two books

Full Tilt: Ireland to India with a Bicycle, and *Tibetan Footpath*.

Based on the diaries she _____ on

her travels, Dervla Murphy _____

writing and produced over twenty travel books.



EXTRA CHALLENGE

Write questions to get the missing information in the text. Write the questions using you, as if you were interviewing Mark. Marking is directly.

Mark Jones used to work as a
in New Zealand. His life took a dramatic turn one
day in 2012 while he
He was caught in a snowstorm and trapped in an
ice cave. When he was finally rescued after
his legs had



However, Jones refused to let his disability stop him from climbing. On
15 May 2008, after forty days of climbing, he
Mount Everest, the world's tallest mountain at
meters. Jones said for his ascent

Jones, a goodwill ambassador for the Everest Rescue Trust and founder
of the charity Limbs4All, trusted that, though he felt
his achievement, his main goal was to raise funds to provide artificial
legs for disabled people in Tibet.

- 1 _____
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____
- 6 _____
- 7 _____
- 8 _____

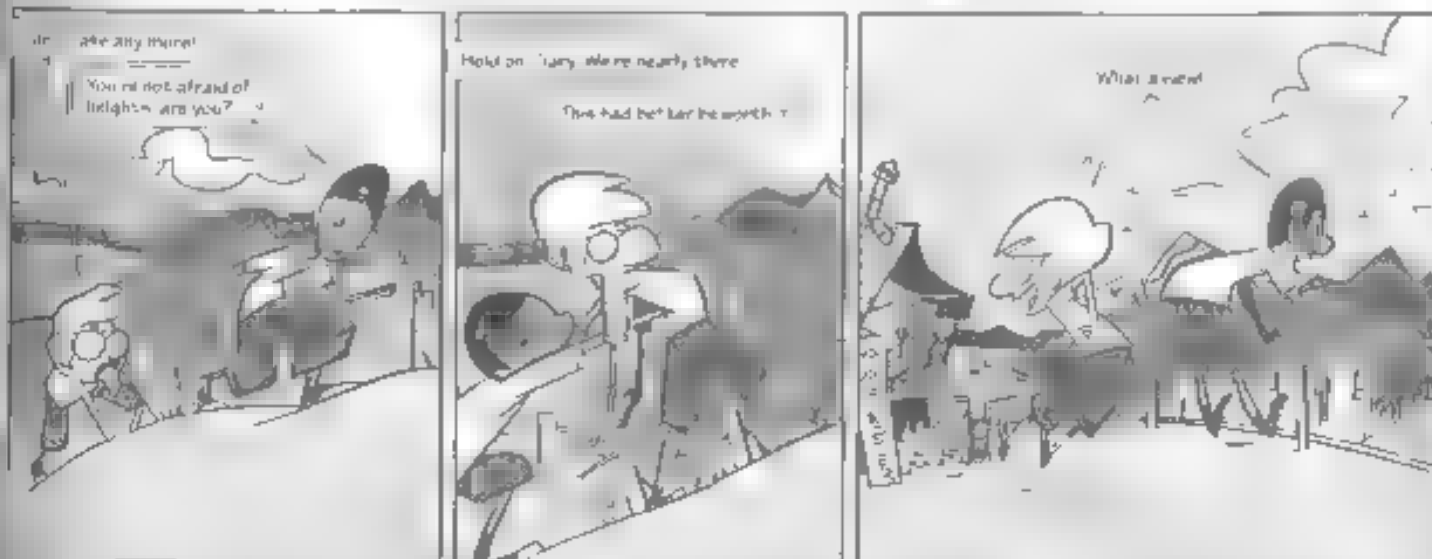
Now go online and find the answers to the questions

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

- 1 What was Jones's reason for sailing around the world?
- 2 What time of year is the best time to sail around the world?
- 3 What was the biggest challenge Jones faced?
- 4 What was the biggest challenge Jones faced?
- 5 What was the biggest challenge Jones faced?
- 6 What was the biggest challenge Jones faced?

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. Are Gary and Greg looking at the same thing? What are they looking at?



INTERACTION

Discussing an extreme proposition

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say

- when you totally approve of someone's idea?
- when you hear some disappointing news?
- when you are shocked by something another person wants to do?



- 2 Complete the conversation between three friends, using expressions in the box. Listen and check.

anything worse Absolutely not Think of can't be serious
anything more exciting It's a brilliant idea great shame

Louis: Hi guys, I've got some interesting news! You know Daniele's dad, the TV producer? Well, he's come up with this great concept for a new reality show – and we could be in it!

Jo: Wow, can't imagine I've always wanted to be on TV

Sara: Hang on a second. Those shows can be pretty stupid

Louis: This one's really cool. It's going to be called *Dare You*, and contestants face new challenges every week. They're looking for resourceful and imaginative young people to take part.

Jo: That sounds just like us.

Sara: What kind of challenges are we talking about?

Louis: All sorts: eating insects, sleeping in a room full of spiders, or being buried alive

Sara: What? You?

Louis: I'm serious. I _____ the opportunity. And the sense of achievement. We might even win. There are some fantastic prizes like

Sara: Never mind that. Can't imagine

Louis: That's a

I thought you were the adventurous type

Jo: Well, I think

Come on Sara – please say yes

Sara: I

- 3 Find words or expressions in the conversation that mean

1 to challenge someone to take part in an activity

2 ingenious, clever, capable

3 to put in a hole and cover with earth

4 an accomplishment, when you have been able to complete something

- 4 Match the sentences.

1 Have you heard? Karen has lost her job

2 So first he borrows all that money from you, and now he doesn't even answer your calls?

3 Imagine sailing around the world on a private yacht

4 When she heard she had won the award, she couldn't say anything

5 If someone invited me to Paris, I wouldn't think about it twice

A She was totally lost for words

B Amazing! That would be the trip of a lifetime

C That really takes the biscuit

D Neither would I. I'd go in a flash

E So have Jim and I. We're all in the same boat

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 5  Revise the Express yourself box on page 26 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

Modifiers

1 Complete the sentences with the correct modifier.

The main character was played by a young actress who was _____ gorgeous.

A quite B very C absolutely

2 The male protagonist was _____ handsome as well.

A absolutely B highly C quite

3 Action movies are _____ popular among young people.

A fairly B totally C absolutely

4 The plot was _____ simple.

A completely B rather C utterly

5 Temperatures in the jungle were _____ boiling.

A rather B absolutely C quite

2 Complete the review with suitable modifiers in the box. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.

amazing extremely rather really utterly really

I've just seen the impossible, starring J.A. Bayona. The film, which mixes elements of drama, thriller and disaster movies, is the incredible story of an ordinary family, the Bennetts, who travel to Hawaii to celebrate Christmas. All too soon, their idyllic holiday is brought to an abrupt end when a tsunami hits the resort where they are staying.



The images of the giant wave washing over the resort are _____ realistic and _____ make you feel as if you were drowning too. Stars Naomi Watts and Ewan McGregor are fantastic as the brave parents, struggling desperately to save their children. Tom Holland, who plays the eldest boy, gives an _____ moving performance. Faced to look after his frightened, injured mum, he has to overcome his own fears and grow up almost overnight.

The special effects are _____ amazing and the whole cast is brilliant, but what I like most about this film is its human quality. The Bennett family's epic struggle for survival is a celebration of the power of love, sending a message of hope to other people caught in desperate situations.

At the end of the film, I felt _____ exhausted, but satisfied at the same time. Although some of the images of devastation and suffering are _____ hard to watch, I'd recommend everyone to go and see this film.

3 Read the review again and find adjectives that mean

- 1 _____
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 heroic
- 5 courageous
- 6 peaceful and beautiful

4 Look at the Writing Reference on page 114. Then choose a film you'd like to review and follow the instructions. Write about:

- background information
- the plot and the characters (without giving away too much)
- what you liked / didn't like about it
- whether you'd recommend the film

Reminder

- make critical comments
- Use present tenses to summarize the plot

READING

1 Read the text quickly. What is its main objective?

- A To compare the Arab Spring to the Revolutions of 1989
- B To explain the phenomenon of the Arab Spring
- C To describe the death of a young Tunisian
- D To explain the role of the internet in the revolts

The Arab Spring



It was the death of a young Tunisian street vendor, Mohamed Bouazizi, who set himself on fire on 17 December, to protest against the confiscation of his wares by the authorities.

Following Bouazizi's death, trouble broke out all over Tunisia. Thousands of enraged young Arabs, many of them jobless, took to the streets, to protest against the lack of opportunities, complaints about widespread corruption, rising food prices, and a general lack of freedom persuaded other Tunisians to join the demonstrations. The government responded with a violent crackdown.

One notable difference between the Arab Spring and the 1989 revolutions in Eastern Europe, with which it is often compared, was the role played by the internet. Many ordinary citizens went to the trouble of recording and reporting acts of government brutality and human rights abuses online, where they spread like wildfire.

Tunisia's so-called 'Jasmine Revolution' culminated in the fall of President Ben Ali's despotic regime. It was a victory of the common people and perhaps the first time in history that an Arab dictator was removed by a revolution, instead of a military uprising.

Inspired by Tunisia's example, Egyptian demonstrators took control of Tahrir Square in central Cairo at the end of January 2011. President Mubarak, who had ruled the country with an iron fist for 30 years, defied the protesters, but on 10th February he was forced to step down.

The success of the Egyptian revolution encouraged further revolts in Yemen, Bahrain, Libya and Syria. The case of Libya, where protests escalated into a full-blown civil war, received a lot of media attention. After months of fighting Colonel Gaddafi was killed by rebels and a transitional council took control of the country.

The success of the Egyptian revolution encouraged further revolts in Yemen, Bahrain, Libya and Syria. The case of Libya, where protests escalated into a full-blown civil war, received a lot of media attention. After months of fighting Colonel Gaddafi was killed by rebels and a transitional council took control of the country.

At present, the outcome of many of these revolts is still unclear. However, of one thing we can be sure: the eyes of the world will be watching them.

2 Read the text again and choose the correct answers.

- 1 Mohamed Bouazizi committed suicide because
 - A he wanted to protest against his precarious situation.
 - B he had been fired.
 - C he was a political activist.
 - D he suffered from a mental illness.
- 2 Which of these is mentioned as a reason for the protests?
 - A An increase in taxes.
 - B Religious conflicts.
 - C Outrage over Bouazizi's death.
 - D Information on the internet.
- 3 What is said about the internet?
 - A It was as important as during the 1989 revolutions.
 - B It was shut down by the government.
 - C It provided information about government repression.
 - D It was a useful instrument for political parties.

4 In paragraph 4, what is meant by 'citizens went to the trouble of recording and reporting'?

- A Citizens got into trouble over this.
- B Citizens made a big effort to do this.
- C Citizens caused a lot of trouble for the government.
- D Citizens gave up doing this because it was too difficult.

5 What was special about the Jasmine Revolution?

- A No Arab army had ever been able to remove a dictator.
- B The common people and the army took power together.
- C No Arab dictator had ever been overthrown.
- D Ordinary citizens had never before defeated a dictator.

More expressions with trouble

3 Match the sentences.

- 1 My little brother is terribly naughty.
- 2 The last Maths exam was quite easy.
- 3 I filled in the application form online.

- A That saved me the trouble of having to go to the post office.
- B I managed to answer all the questions without too much trouble.
- C He just can't keep out of trouble.

VOCABULARY

Countries & politics

4 Complete the sentences with the adjectives in the box.

protest, demonstration, independence
unhappy, president, riots

Every day, hundreds of refugees are crossing the
to get away from the violence.

The police have been called in to deal with the violent
at the prison.

A state with a king or queen is called a

Thousands of citizens took to the streets in a massive
against new government legislation.

Her head of state in a republic is called the

Many former colonies had to fight a war of liberation to
gain their

5 For each line, cross out the word that does not go with
the word in bold.

ethnic: cleansing, country, minority, music, violence

2 mass: media, money, production, protests,
unemployment

3 gain: independence, time, votes, a war, weight

4 outbreak of: an epidemic, fighting, rioting, prison, the
Second World War

5 ruling: citizen, class, elite, party, president

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the
words in brackets.

In most European countries, governments are
elected (democrat)

2 His _____ of a government to impose its
will on the people. (democrat)

3 Many developing countries are undergoing a process of
holding elections and choosing their
representatives. (democrat)

4 The UK Conservative party won several elections under
the _____ of Margaret Thatcher (lead)

5 Nelson Mandela was an inspirational
for his people (lead)

6 Apple is one of the _____ companies in the
field of technology. (lead)

7 NGOs are non-_____ organisations
(govern)

8 Arnold Schwarzenegger was _____ of the
state of California for many years. (govern)

9 During the time of Mussolini, Italy was a
(dictate)

10 Freedom fighters put an end to the _____
regime of Gaddafi. (dictate)

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Words connected to voting

7 Read the text and complete the summary below with
the words or phrases in bold. You do not need to change
any of them.



Until the late nineteenth century, the electoral laws of many Western democracies were based on whether a person paid property tax (in other words, relatively prosperous landowners) to cast their votes. Moreover, property was not the only requirement. In some countries the right to vote depended on origin or religion.

Universal suffrage, which is the extension of the right to vote to all adult citizens, was originally limited to men only. **Female voters** were not included until some 10 to 20 years later.

On the brink of the twentieth century, women in many countries launched campaigns to obtain the right to vote. Some women called **suffragettes** favoured a militant approach, which included interrupting political meetings, damaging public property and even detonating bombs. Their motto was 'Deeds not Words'.

In 1893, New Zealand became the first country that **granted** women the right to vote. Shortly after that, women in South Australia became the first to obtain the right to **stand for parliament**. British women had to wait until after the First World War to be given limited voting rights.

Notable latecomers were France, where women could not vote until 1945, Italy (1946), Belgium (1948) and Switzerland (1971).

The concept of _____
that all citizens can _____
However, in the past, the _____ of
many countries actually limited people's _____
Women activists, called _____
fought for the right to include _____
Women in Switzerland were weren't _____
_____ suffrage until 1971.
but now women in most countries can not only vote
but also _____

GRAMMAR

Present perfect simple & continuous

- 1 Complete the conversations with verbs in the box, using past simple or present perfect simple.

arrive be born come decide enjoy get on go have join know live love meet set up send spend

Andy: Who's your best friend, Sue?

Sue: My best friend is a girl called Wang Ji.

Andy: Oh really? How long _____ you _____ each other?

Sue: For 5 years. We _____ a primary school and we _____ always _____ we _____

Andy: _____ she _____ here _____

Sue: Oh yes. Wang Ji _____ he _____ whole _____ he _____ his parents _____ to the UK 25 years ago and _____ a small business. Wang Ji _____ never even _____ to China

Pete: A new student _____ just _____ our class – a guy called Kim

Karen: Kim? Isn't that a girl's name?

Pete: Not in Korea, which is where he's from. He only _____ in the UK 3 months ago and his English isn't that great, but he's a really nice guy.

Karen: Why _____ he _____ to study here?

Pete: He _____ no choice really. The company his dad works for _____ him here: he travels a lot. Imagine, Kim _____ a ready _____ in Japan, China and Russia. Apparently he _____ Japan but he _____ Russia that much, it was too cold

- 2 Put the words in order to make sentences in the present perfect simple or continuous.

1 In / never / Eastern Europe / been / have / anywhere / I

2 for / been / Russia / has / Harriet / a year / studying / in

3 ever / the / anything / on / you / internet / have / sold / I

4 has / trouble / starting / having / the car / Dad / been

5 lately / have / what / doing / been / you / I

- 3 Complete this news report with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

announce be demonstrate do disagree fire protest say

About 500,000 people _____

_____ mass demonstrations _____

_____ against proposed _____

_____ 5,000 civil _____

_____ _____

_____ _____

_____ and will continue to do everything they can to rescue the economy. However, the opposition party _____ they _____

_____ plans to organise another march for tomorrow. For the moment, tensions in the street remain high and it looks as if these protests are here to stay

- 4 Correct the mistakes.

1 I have been writing ten emails this morning

2 I have this car for two years now

3 My grandfather has never gone abroad

4 They have worked all morning, but they still haven't finished the project

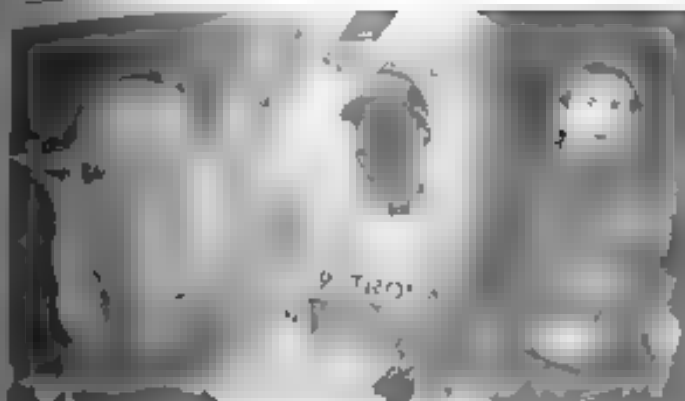
5 My parents have got married 25 years ago

6 What have you done for the last two hours?

7 When have you last bought a CD?

8 We can't get her that book because she already read

LISTENING



- 1 You are going to listen to part of a radio show in which two callers are given clues about eight famous people or icons. Before you listen, match the words from the recording to the definitions.

amplache

2. a(n) fixer

3. an enigmatic

4. an enigmatic

5. an enigma

A. extravagant, shocking

B. evil character

C. the man who is married to your mother but not your real father

D. with a mix of female and male characteristics

E. a very long

- 2 Listen and answer the questions. What are the jobs of the six icons?

1. Numbers 1 and 2 are

2. Number 3 is a(n)

3. Number 4 is a(n)

4. Numbers 5 and 6 work in _____. One is a(n) _____ and the other a(n) _____.

- 3 Listen again and choose the correct answers.

1. Icon number one moved several times

A. in order to study foreign languages

B. for family reasons

C. on his work

2. Icon number 2

A. used her studies to advance in her career

B. studied languages at university

C. studied something unrelated to her current career

3. Icon number 3

A. was born in the 1970s

B. is unsure about his identity

C. has an unusual feature

4. Icon number 4

A. broke five world records at the 2008 Olympics

B. was the first runner to break 100m and 200m world records at the same Olympics

C. was the first Jamaican to win an Olympic medal

5. Icon number 5

A. has made a wide range of films

B. is American

C. won an Oscar in 2005 for a martial arts movie

6. Icon number 6

A. once played James Bond

B. has been nominated for 8 Oscars

C. was the first actor from his country to win an Oscar

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

- 4 Write the names of the icons.

1. _____ 4

2. _____ 5

3. _____ 6

- 5 Answer the questions.

1. Which country did icon 1 move to after his parents divorce?

2. What did icon 2 study?

3. What was the name of one of the stage personalities of icon 3?

4. How many world records did icon 4 break at the 2008 Olympics?

5. Where is icon 5 from?

6. What was the title of the James Bond film in which icon 6 appeared?

- 6 Write these sentences in your language.

1. I should have guessed that

2. She got involved in politics.

3. He was the first Spanish actor to be nominated for an Oscar.

READING

1 Look at the extract and the heading and first sentence of the text. What is the text about?

- A Changes in EU politics
- B The way politicians see the role of the EU
- C Politicians who want to leave the EU
- D Ordinary citizens questioning the EU

Scepticism, or *skepticism* in American English, comes from the Greek word *enkyria*, or *skepsis*, which means 'enquiry'. It is used to refer to a group of philosophical ideas which range from saying that we can never really know anything at all to encouraging us to maintain a questioning attitude towards knowledge, facts or opinions that are stated as facts.

However, when applied to the European Union (EU), the terms **Euroscepticism** and **Eurosceptic** are normally defined the following way:

Eurosceptic	<i>adj</i> / <i>noun</i> <i>skeptik</i>	is a person opposed to these ideas with the intention of ending the European Union
Eurosceptic	<i>adj</i> / <i>noun</i> <i>skeptikal</i>	is a person who is opposed to these ideas with the intention of ending the European Union

Eurosceptics

After the initial euphoria, enthusiasm for the European Union has given way to mixed feelings. Here is what some EU citizens have to say.



Pauline
from the UK

My father grew up in the aftermath of the Second World War and he saw the European Union as the best way to prevent future wars. Traditionally, my family are working class people, involved in the Labour Party and the trade unions. We believed that free trade agreements would bring more jobs and prosperity. However, I've come to change my mind. EU involvement has gone too far

with bureaucrats thinking up rules for everything, from livestock like how to sell eggs, to serious matters such as being able to extradite terrorists. I believe the UK should withdraw from the EU, sooner rather than later.



Luis
from Portugal

I studied journalism, but I've never had a stable job. Young people can only find precarious, temporary jobs for very low wages. Changes in the labour law have meant that anybody can lose their job any time. The unions have become powerless. We also feel very disappointed with the government, who seem incapable of offering any alternatives to the government's austerity policy. That's

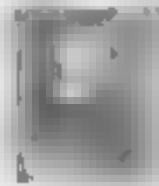
why I have joined a group that opposes the Troika (the EU, the International Monetary Fund and the European central bank). We organize street protests against all these cuts that are impoverishing our country. Condemning more and more people to unemployment is just asking for trouble.



Katarzyna
from Poland

I grew up in the time of the Solidarity movement. We were really optimistic then and we believed that a united Europe would be a place of opportunity. But I'm afraid it hasn't worked out like that. Full-time employment is very hard to get, and wages have remained low. Fortunately for us, Polish people have a strong work-ethic and are willing to work long hours at four or five different jobs, just to

make ends meet. That's why it makes me angry when I hear some people complain about people from newer EU countries coming over to work. It's as if we are second-rate citizens taking advantage of our richer neighbours. If you ask me, EU membership has brought more trouble than it's worth.



Heinz
from Germany

Don't get me wrong, I don't support Alternatives for Germany, and I think that pulling out of the euro would be madness. European countries need to stick together, if we want to play any kind of role in world politics. But I also think that some countries should look closely at the way they run their economies. Overspending, corruption and the bursting of the housing bubble are all problems that need to be avoided in future. And if the richer countries are going to keep helping to support the poorer ones, I think it's only fair that we ask for some changes in the ways their economies are managed.

GLOSSARY

aftermath	the period of time after a disastrous event
withdraw	to break away from, remove, leave
wage	payment for work, especially if on a daily or weekly basis

impoverish	to make someone poorer
make ends meet	to survive on the money that you have

2 Answer the questions about the people from the text.

Write the person mentioned.

1. involving the single currency?
2. the problem of joblessness?
3. the importance of European unity despite the problems?
4. the instability?
5. the government's policies making the people worse off?
6. the financial troubles of other countries?
7. the role as a peacemaker?
8. being discriminated against?
9. the national character of their country?
10. excessive regulation?

3 Choose the correct answers.

In extract A, what is said about bureaucrats?

- A They are unimportant.
- B They interfere too much.
- C They fight against terrorism.
- D They create important regulations.

In extract B, what is said about the opposition?

- A They are powerless to defend the workers.
- B They are opposed to the Troika.
- C They are just as bad as the governing party.
- D They haven't come up with any good ideas.

In extract C, what does Karaczyna say makes her angry?

- A not having full-time employment
- B the fact that wages are low
- C the incorrect perception people have of people from countries like hers
- D people from newer EU countries

In extract D, what is meant by the *bursting of the housing bubble*?

- A people buying houses at very high prices
- B houses collapsing due to lack of money
- C a collapse in the prices of houses
- D house prices continuously rising

Overall, which adjectives best sum up the four attitudes to the EU?

- A hopeless and depressed
- B disillusioned and let down
- C critical but optimistic
- D furious and aggressive

VOCABULARY

People words

4 Answer the questions with the correct forms of the people words in the box.

act cycle interview law politics reside

What do you call a person who

1. helps people who have legal problems?
2. performs in film or on stage?
3. rides a bicycle?
4. is being questioned by a journalist?
5. is a member of a political party?
6. lives in a particular place?

5 Correct the mistakes in the people words.

1. He is a famous cooker with his own restaurant.
2. He is a scientific who works in a lab.
3. There are only 10,000 habitants in this town.
4. We have three business students working as trainers in our company, learning about management and finance.

6 Complete the sentences.

1. If you have siblings, then you are a _____ or a _____.
2. If you have uncles and aunts, then you are a _____ or a _____.
3. If you belong to any club or organization, you are a _____.
4. If you play sports, you are a _____.
5. If you play an instrument, you are a _____.

7 Look back at Verb Zone in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 3.

8 Tick the correct sentences and correct the prepositions in the others.

1. Yugoslavia began to break up in 1990. —
2. I couldn't get through at the company because the line was always busy. —
3. He broke away from the crowd of protestors and threw a bottle. —
4. Although he lost three elections, he went to trying. —
5. Doctors are doing everything they can to stop an epidemic from breaking up. —

1 Look at the sentences and then answer the questions.

- 1 The main square is the place where most protests are being held.
 - 2 The novel, which is set in an African country, is about a lady detective.
 - 3 The waitress who served us was very attentive.
 - 4 My friend Antonio, whose nickname is Speedy, is a very fast runner.
 - 5 The explorers realised that the ruins that they had been looking for were right in front of them, covered by the jungle.
- A Which sentences are defining and which are non-defining?
- B In which sentence can the relative pronoun be replaced by *that*?
- C In which sentence can the relative pronoun be omitted?

2 Complete the review with suitable pronouns.



One of my favourite books is Q & A,¹ is short for 'question and answer'. The novel, ² _____, was adapted into the film *Slumdog Millionaire*, is set in and around the slums of Bombay. ³ _____ Ram Mohammed Thomas was born. After losing his mother at an early age, he runs away from the slum and lives all kinds of adventures, some in the company of his good friend Salim, ⁴ _____ is an orphan too. We meet the adult Ram many years later, ⁵ _____ he is a contestant on the quiz show *Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?* Ram manages to answer all the questions correctly, ⁶ _____ means he's going to win a lot of money. But not if the quiz master _____ has been trying to trick him, can avoid it. Ram is arrested and taken to the police station, ⁷ _____ he is beaten. To prove his innocence, he has to tell his life story to a mysterious lady lawyer, ⁸ _____ has come to his rescue.

3 Write situations that explain the second parts of the sentences.

- 1 _____, which meant I couldn't revise my vocabulary before the exam.
- 2 _____, which makes him really nervous.
- 3 _____, which reminded me of the place we used to go on holiday.
- 4 _____, which is bad for their teeth.
- 5 _____, which is why the fighting went on for so long.

4 Join the halves of the sentences.

- 1 The shop only had a few T-shirts.
 - 2 My mother forces me to eat vegetables.
 - 3 In my job I meet a lot of famous people.
 - 4 My uncle has a lot of friends.
 - 5 I have seven cousins.
- A some of whom can be really arrogant
- B none of which I liked very much
- C some of which I can't stand
- D all of whom are good students
- E most of whom he has known since school

5 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 The house in where I was born is in a small village.
- 2 I have had a lot of different English teachers, some of which were very funny.
- 3 The president, whose wife had been a singer, won the elections with a vast majority.
- 4 There have been times which I have felt very stressed at work.
- 5 *The Aviator*, who starred Leonardo DiCaprio, is a film about the life of Howard Hughes.
- 6 My friend wouldn't stop talking during the film. It really annoyed me.

EXTRA CHALLENGE

Complete the text with the words in the box and the correct words in bold.

to be in a ... friendly ... our modern ... for people ... please ... on ...

... where everyone ...

... **gather** ... **meet** ...

... where we ...

... **cafés** and terraces, where

... **piece** of fruit pie, a

... **exactly** right

... of the ...

... **by** ... **on** foot. Today is Friday, which is one

... without ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... of the ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

... **stop** ... **rest** ...

Do you know the name of the city? If not, go online and find out.

Go online and find the answers to the questions

1 What were the questions and how does it relate to Mikhail Gorbachev?

2 What did he do and how did he feel about it?

3 What was his name and how did he feel about it?

4 What pop band was formed by Ice and Lemon Bork in 1986?

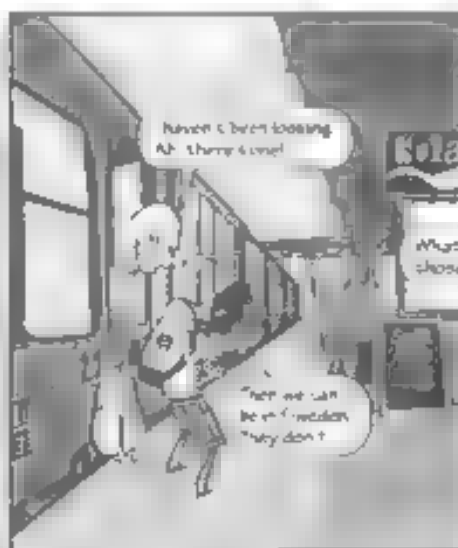
5 How many years was he in prison?

6 What was his name and how did he feel about it?

7 What was his name and how did he feel about it?

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. What do you think Greg says? How does he know they're not in Sweden?



INTERACTION

Making a decision

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say

- 1 when you talk about an occasion that is unique?
- 2 when you want to postpone a decision until someone else has spoken?
- 3 when you are not very excited about something?

- 2 A group of friends are planning a weekend away. Complete the conversation with expressions from the box. Then listen and check.

Sounds good to me. wait and hear your take on that.
the point of might have something to say
something for everyone doesn't really grab me
what if Apparently

Maya: I think we should go camping in the mountains.
It's not too far, it's quite cheap and Giacomo and
will even be able to practise our climbing.

Rob: That's _____, I've
got no head for heights. What are the rest of us
supposed to do in the meantime?

Maya: You could go hiking.
_____ some of the
scenery is quite stunning.

Rob: I'm still not sure about that. Let's
_____ what
Sandra has to say. Sandra, Maya and Giacomo
want to go camping and climbing. What's

Sandra: Guys, what's _____
lying in a tent, being uncomfortable, if we could
stay in a luxury hotel with all the mod cons?
I've found one with a spa. It's got several large
pools, jacuzzis, a sauna, you name it.

Rob: _____

Maya: And how are we going to pay for that?

Sandra: Trust me, it's quite affordable. I've found a great
bargain on the internet.

Maya: Well, I don't know. Giacomo
_____ about that.
well, Giacomo, how would you like to go to a
spa?

Giacomo: A spa? That's for girls, isn't it?

Sandra: Come on. Don't be so old-fashioned! This place
has got _____
Apart from the pools and the beauty
treatments, they also run horseback tours in the
surroundings.

Giacomo: Well _____ we at
least have a look at Sandra's website?

- 3 Do you think the friends decide to go to the spa?
Why / Why not? Listen and check.

- 4 Find words or expressions in the conversation that mean.

- 1 be afraid of high places _____
- 2 very beautiful _____
- 3 things that make your stay more comfortable _____
- 4 and so on _____
- 5 something you are able to buy at an unusually low price _____

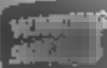
- 5 Match the sentences.

- 1 Why don't we go deep sea diving?
- 2 If we go to Tokyo, you'll be able to practise your Japanese.
- 3 Apparently, hiking in the Alps is really amazing.
- 4 What's the point of travelling to those remote places?
- 5 Paris has got something for everyone.
- 6 I've heard that a safari in Tanzania is a once-in-a-lifetime experience.

- A What if we went trekking in the Himalayas instead?
- B I'm not so keen on that - I might get claustrophobic.
- C You can go sightseeing, shopping, and eat all kinds of great food.
- D There are so many beautiful spots in our own country.
- E That doesn't really grab me. I'm not into wildlife.
- F I'm not sure - I'm not really into crowded cities.

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 6 Revise the Express yourself box on page 36 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.



Adding information

- 1 Rewrite the sentences using the expressions in brackets.

The hotel is quite close to the beach and my friends will be staying there. (Not only)

2 I'll get a salary, a company car and some other perks. (as well as)

3 She has three children and works part-time in a school - and she's doing a Master's degree. (In addition)

- 2 Read the profile and put paragraphs A-E in the correct order. Then match the paragraphs to headings 1-5.

- 1 A turning point
- 2 An icon
- 3 Victory at last
- 4 First achievements
- 5 Early life

A ... into the Xhosa tribe. Mandela's father's family belonged to Thembu royal family. Despite their relatively high social status, his Christian mother sent him to a mission school where he was given the name Nelson by his father. Mandela later went on to study law at a Johannesburg university.

B ... ally came about in February 1990. In a famous speech broadcast on television, Mandela declared that he was committed to peace and reconciliation.

C ... and ...

D ... with the ANC (African National Congress). In 1950 he was elected President of the Transvaal Branch. Mandela worked as a lawyer, fighting unjust racial laws, and was involved in a militant struggle against apartheid.

E ... 1961, Mandela was arrested ... prisoners had to break rocks. At night, Mandela studied law and Afrikaans, hoping to win Afrikaner people over to his cause.

- 3 Find the sentences with the word **and** in bold in paragraphs C, D and E. Rewrite them with the expressions in brackets.

- 1 (as well as)
- 2 (not only)
- 3 (along with)

- 4 Look at the Writing Reference on page 115. Choose a person you'd like to write a profile about. The person can be dead or alive, famous or just someone you know. Write about:

the person and say why you admire them

- their early life
- their achievements
- the end of their life, or what they are doing now

Reminder

- Use past tense to tell the story of their life
- Use the present perfect simple if the person is still alive to talk about their achievements

VOCABULARY

1 Complete the sentence pairs with the correct words.

1 make do

A You shouldn't worry so much about your exams, just _____ your best

B Before doing the shopping, it's always useful to _____ a list

2 his own / himself

A My brother doesn't like team sports, he prefers running by _____

B Last summer he went travelling around Europe on _____

3 embarrassed / embarrassing

A I was so _____ when I watched my dad trying to dance hip-hop.

B It's _____ when you can't remember someone's name

4 caused trouble / had trouble

A We _____ parking the car because there were very few suitable spaces.

B Strong winds and torrential rains _____ for motorists last night

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

achievement demonstration exposure memory
overthrown riots setbacks transition

1 The expedition suffered several serious _____ including equipment breaking down, and adverse weather

2 The President was _____ by a military coup

3 When I reached the summit, I felt an incredible sense of _____

4 After the revolution, the country was ruled by a _____ government for the first year

5 When the survivors were found by rescuers they were all _____ suffering from _____

6 _____ broke out after police officers arrested several local youngsters for vandalism.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1 Working as a nurse must be very _____ (stress)

2 The average _____ (high) of basketball players is 1.80m

3 Workers who have to carry out the same tasks every day often complain of _____ (bored)

4 The views were extremely _____ (impress)

5 He works as an _____ (economy) for a multinational company

GRAMMAR

4 Tick the correct sentences and rewrite the incorrect sentences so that they are correct.

1 You haven't to wear a uniform to work in an office

2 You mustn't make any noise when going upstairs, the children are sleeping

3 Play music is a great way to relax

4 Despite of his talent, he never became famous

5 That film isn't worth see. It's really boring

6 In spite of the traffic, we managed to get there on time

5 Complete the sentences with the past simple / continuous, past perfect simple / continuous or present perfect simple / continuous of the verb in brackets.

1 Sally _____ (feel) nervous for days. She _____ (always hate) flying and she _____ (not look) forward to the long flight across the Atlantic

2 _____ (you ever eat, snail?) _____ (try) some last year when my parents _____ (take) me to France. They were _____

delicious
3 By the time their parents _____ (get up), the two boys _____ already watched three videos

4 I _____ (work) for four hours now, but _____ (only write) one page of my essay

5 The rivers are running high because the snow on the mountains _____ (melt) in weeks. It _____ (start) melting last month

6 Connect the sentences using relative clauses and commas where necessary. More than one answer may be possible.

1 Isak Dinesen was a famous writer. The author's real name was Karen Blixen

2 My car broke down. I arrived late for my interview

3 A waiter served me my food. He was very polite

4 She has lots of shoes. She doesn't wear most of them

5 I have two uncles and three aunts. They all live in Australia

6 The coast of Croatia is beautiful. We went there last year

REVIEW CHECK

7 Complete the text with the correct words (A, B, C or D).



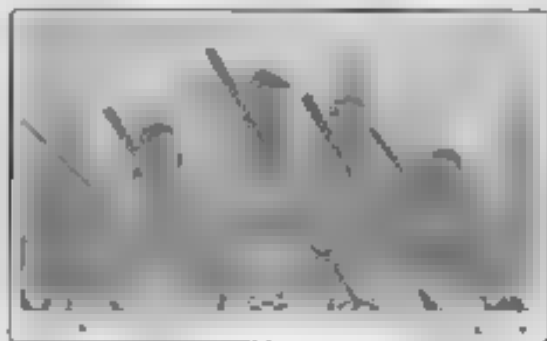
Ellen Johnson Sirleaf is the 24th President of Liberia and the first female head of state in Africa. She was invested as President in 2006 and has ruled the country ¹ _____ seven and a half years now.

She spent ² _____ a ten-year stay in the USA, ³ _____ Accounting, Economics and Administration. She returned home and worked for President Tolbert's government as Assistant Minister and Minister of Finance. In 1989, she fled the country when rebels ⁴ _____ President Tolbert during a civil war. She moved to Washington DC and worked ⁵ _____ for the World Bank. In 1992, she joined the United Nations where she investigated conflict in Rwanda, and the global situation ⁶ _____ in women at the time. In 2000, she was re-elected. Sirleaf was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize ⁷ _____ of her work for women's rights and politics. She has been featured in magazines like Time and Newsweek. Sirleaf is one of the most powerful women in the world.

- 1
A elected B chosen C voted D selected
- 2
A since B for C during D meanwhile
- 3
A while B when C where D which
- 4
A assassinated B have assassinated C assassinating D had been assassinated
- 5
A for work B for working C working D to work
- 6
A indigenous B ethnic C native D traditional
- 7
A had having B were having C had had D have had
- 8
A where B which C that D who
- 9
A recognized B recognizing C recognize D recognition
- 10
A have been listing B were listing C have listed D has listed

Video

The Maori



BEFORE YOU WATCH

1 Read the introduction and the questions in NOW WATCH.



The Maori are the indigenous population of New Zealand. They are a Polynesian people whose culture has a significant influence on modern New Zealand society.

NOW WATCH

2 Answer the questions.

- 1 When and how did the Maori arrive in New Zealand?
- 2 What factors might have contributed to creating a warrior culture among the Maori?
- 3 What is the 'haka'?
- 4 What other Maori traditions are mentioned?
- 5 What is the 'hongi'?

3 Match words and phrases 1-5 from the video with definitions A-E.

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 1 warrior | A objects used for fighting, e.g. guns |
| 2 weapons | B a large meal, usually as a celebration |
| 3 ancestors | C art made by cutting into wood or stone |
| 4 carvings | D someone who is skilled at fighting |
| 5 feast | E relatives from generations ago |

FOLLOW UP

4 Go online and find out about the Maori. Write an interesting fact to share with your class.

Did you know that ...?

4 WHO'S WATCHING YOU?

READING

- 1 Scan the text and write the three inventions mentioned.

1
2
3

3 that might save inventions



1 Most of us associate bar codes with supermarkets where cashiers scan the products we're buying and tell us the price. What is less well known is that bar codes are also used in many other places and for other purposes. For instance, hospitals have started using them in patients' wristbands.

Whenever patients are treated anywhere in the hospital, the wristband is scanned in order to show their medical records. This way, the risk of any patient receiving the wrong medication or treatment is considerably reduced.

2 Around 15 million babies are born prematurely throughout the world every year. Up to one-fifth die and many others suffer serious health problems. Simply by keeping them warm, many deaths and illnesses can be avoided. Whereas incubators cost as much as \$20 000 and

need electricity to work, an American NGO called Embrace has developed a low cost infant warmer at a tiny fraction of this price (1%). It can work with electricity or run off a generator.

3 Given the statistics concerning deaths from falling earth quake debris, it is not surprising that companies are looking for a way to protect people in buildings from falling debris. The bed is made of very strong wood from 30- to 40-year old trees that is

reinforced with metal, and it has an overhead canopy. Starting from \$5,600, it isn't exactly cheap. But taking into account the amount of time people spend in bed, it may well save a lot of lives, as well as helping lots of people sleep more peacefully. And surely that's worth the money.

- 2 Read the text again and circle T (true) or F (false) in sentences 1-6. Rewrite the false sentences to make them true.

- 1 Hospitals have increased the use of scanners in patients' treatment. T / F
- 2 Patients are given special bracelets with background information about their illness. T / F
- 3 About five million premature babies die every year. T / F
- 4 Many of these babies could be kept alive using relatively simple technology. T / F
- 5 The bed protects people from things that might otherwise fall on them. T / F
- 6 The bed could be a good investment for Japanese people. T / F

- 3 Find the numbers in the text and explain who or what they refer to.

15 million

20 000

1

60

40-40

5,600



More verbs which mean 'increase' or 'decrease'

- 4 Decide whether the verbs mean up or down.

crash drop shoot up sink
sky-rocket plummet

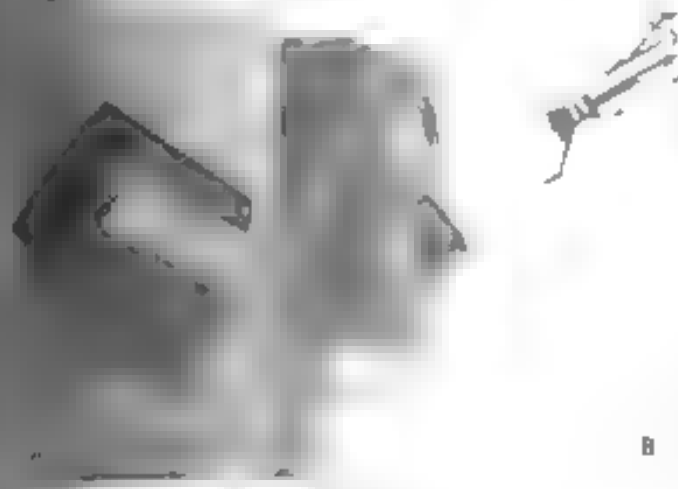
- 5 Circle the correct words.

- 1 After being hit, the plane plummeted / crashed towards the ground.
- 2 The price of the company's shares sank / sky-rocketed after news of their latest success.
- 3 I dropped / sank the ring into the water and walked away.
- 4 Interest in the new car shot up / crashed after several celebrities bought one.

VOCABULARY

Surveillance

- 6 Which identification methods can you see in pictures A and B?



- 7 Match the words to the descriptions.

- 1 used in television, CCTV
- 2 identification
- 3 security guard
- 4 biometric information
- 5 microchip
- 6 radio frequency identification (RFID)

- A the use of radio-frequency electromagnetic fields to identify and track tags attached to objects, animals or people
- B the use of video cameras for surveillance
- C This is used to identify people from physiological characteristics such as fingerprints, DNA or facial traits.
- D An electronic circuit that is one of the basic components of computers and other electronic devices, and is used to transmit data signals
- E A type of physical identification based on the coloured part of our eyes
- F A document that often includes a photograph and perhaps a microchip and is proof of the holder's identity

- 8 Match the words from exercise 7 to their possible uses.

- 1 to locate a valuable horse that has been stolen
- 2 as a deterrent to shoplifters
- 3 to control access to buildings that contain sensitive information
- 4 to stop a suspect at the border
- 5 in household appliances, such as dishwashers
- 6 to validate a signature when paying by credit card

- 9 Can you think of more possible uses for the forms of surveillance in exercise 7?

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Safety & security

- 10 Circle the correct words. Use a dictionary if necessary.

- 1 Police are concerned about the security / safety of the missing boy.
- 2 Children need the security / safety of a stable family life.
- 3 Airport security / safety has been tightened due to terrorist threats.
- 4 In recent years, airline companies have considerably improved their security / safety records.
- 5 Survivors of the earthquake were airlifted to security / safety by helicopters.
- 6 In these times of crisis, job security, safety can no longer be guaranteed.

- 11 Make expressions by completing the spider diagrams with the words in the box. Decide whether they go before or after the words in the diagrams.

belt camera food guard helmet
national net pin social top



- 12 Choose three expressions from exercise 11 and write sentences with them.

- 13 Complete the sentences with expressions A–E.

- 1 Never walk home alone at night. Remember there's
- 2 There was a lot of turbulence during the flight. Fortunately, in the end we all arrived
- 3 Even though the risk is low, the doctor recommended taking malaria tablets. She said it's
- 4 You shouldn't worry about your daughter's operation. The surgeon is excellent, so she'll be
- 5 I know you've checked the figures, but please do it one more time just to be...

- A in safe hands
- B safe and sound
- C on the safe side
- D better to be safe than sorry
- E safety in numbers

GRAMMAR

Uses of will | Conjunctions in the future

1 Read the exchanges. Match the examples with *will* to correct uses A–E.

- 1 Mrs Diaz: This shopping bag's so heavy!
Danni: I'll carry it for you
- 2 Mum: Johnny, you still haven't tidied your room!
Johnny: I'll do it tonight Mum, honestly
- 3 Dad: How's the project, Julia? Nearly finished?
Julia: Not quite Dad. Will you give me a hand tonight?
- 4 Paula: Do you know much about climate change?
Leon: Not much, but I think the stormy weather will get worse
- 5 Carl: I'm going for a coffee
Louis: Great idea. I'll come with you

- A prediction
- B spontaneous decision
- C request
- D promise
- E offer

2 Complete the predictions and match them to reasons or consequences A–E.

- 1 In ten years' time all houses will be _____ ()
- 2 In the future, we won't need _____ to get round the city ()
- 3 I think ordinary citizens will write _____ ()
- 4 It will be easier to trace missing children, because _____ ()
- 5 As for the weather, there will _____ ()

- A The effects of global warming will become more and more apparent
- B As soon as you walk in, your favourite music will start playing
- C This will make the news so much more democratic
- D We won't need to, because public transport will be free
- E That way, the police will be able to keep track of their movements

3 Respond to the statements in an appropriate way, using *will* or *won't*.

- 1 The phone is ringing
- 2 Oh no, it's raining and I haven't brought an umbrella!
- 3 I'm thinking of going cycling this weekend – anyone interested?
- 4 We've heard of Mr. Kagami
- 5 Remember it's a surprise! Jamie doesn't know we're organizing a party
- 6 Are you all already there and waiting to get in? I'll be there in a minute

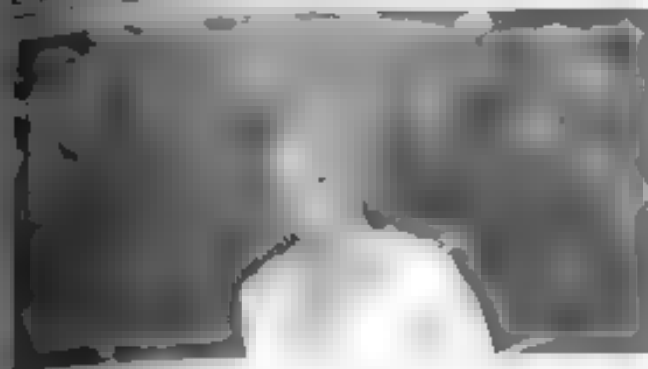
4 Complete the sentences so that they mean the same.

- 1 I'll get home from work and then I'll send you an email.
As soon as _____
- 2 My dad gets home. Then my mum goes to bed.
Until _____
- 3 My sister finishes university in June. Then she takes a gap year.
After _____
- 4 If we don't hear from you, you won't get the job.
Unless _____
- 5 You should study hard so you don't fail the exams.
If _____

5 Tick the sentences that are correct and change the ones that are incorrect.

- 1 He won't be able to finish the work if you help him.
- 2 Unless they don't release the hostages, the police won't negotiate with the terrorists.
- 3 We won't have to take a taxi to the airport unless they confirm the tube strike.
- 4 If there won't be any cameras, the police won't be able to catch the culprits.
- 5 Unless they'll take more measures, the crime rate will continue to rise.
- 6 The exam won't start until everyone has arrived.

LISTENING



- 1 You are going to listen to a radio interview with a bodyguard talking about his work. Before you listen, match the words from the recording to the definitions.

- 1 tall
- 2 muscular
- 3 slim
- 4 average height
- 5 good observation skills
- 6 diplomatic
- 7 good manners

- A based on incorrect information
- B easily seen or noticed
- C to protect yourself from an attacker
- D being strong and attractive man
- E very similar to one's surroundings
- F depend on another person
- G assistants or associates who travel with an important person

- 2 Which characteristics or skills do you think a bodyguard needs? Listen and tick which are mentioned.

- 1 be tall and very muscular
- 2 be in good shape
- 3 know how to use weapons
- 4 be able to drive
- 5 be able to work in a team
- 6 maintain confidentiality
- 7 have good manners and be diplomatic
- 8 have good observation skills

- 3 Listen again and choose the correct answers.

- 1 What do we learn about Paul's appearance?
 - A He is tall and muscular
 - B He is short and slim
 - C He is medium-height
- 2 Why is it important for a bodyguard to blend in?
 - A So that he can observe without being noticed
 - B So as not to disturb the celebrity he protects
 - C So that photographers and journalists don't notice them

- 3 Who are Paul's clients?
 - A The majority are celebrities
 - B All kinds of rich and influential people
 - C Most of them are business people and politicians

- 4 What must a bodyguard do?
 - A Keep his clients' secrets
 - B Talk to the press
 - C Stay out of his clients' personal life

- 5 What is said about the relationship between bodyguards?
 - A They are all very competitive
 - B They turn their backs on each other
 - C They cooperate and protect each other

- 6 Why would Paul like to use a wearable computer?
 - A To notify the authorities about suspects
 - B To facilitate the identification of suspects
 - C To take reliable pictures of suspects

- 7 Why is a bodyguard's job still very physical?
 - A He has to be active and in movement all day
 - B He has to be good at martial arts
 - C He may have to defend himself against attackers

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

- 4 Answer the questions

- 1 How should Paul look when he's protecting a celebrity and why?
- 2 How should a bodyguard deal with high-level clients?
- 3 What does Paul say about top-level clients in a high-risk situation?
- 4 Give examples of the technology Paul mentions.
- 5 How exactly would Paul use a wearable computer?
- 6 When would he use a wearable computer to describe the physical condition of bodyguards?

- 5 Write these sentences in your language

- 1 I'd say you're about average height and build.
- 2 People tend to think of bodyguards as big hunks.
- 3 And how do you get on with them?

READING

- 1 You are going to read an article about a small, wearable computer. Before you read, look at the pictures and try to predict what you could do with it. Then scan the text and check your ideas.

NEW WAY TO SEE THE FUTURE



Although wearable computing devices are not a completely new idea, one in particular has been attracting plenty of media attention. The Optical Head-Mounted Display (OHMD) is a tiny, wearable computer attached to what looks like a normal pair of frameless glasses.

Wearers can receive and reply to messages or phone calls, ask the device to translate for them, get information about transport and possible disruptions, ask for directions and be guided to the place they want to go, take pictures and record videos along the way – all without hardly ever having to take their hands out of their pockets.

Enthusiasts who have been testing this groundbreaking new technology claim that it enables them to obtain useful information without interrupting their daily lives.

On a more serious note, the computer glasses could provide valuable assistance to disabled people or anybody with impaired mobility.

As with all new technologies, there are detractors as well. Any device that allows its wearers to photograph and record people without their consent, or without them being aware of it, raises questions of intimacy and privacy.

Terrorists could employ the technology to explore the site of their next attack, while criminals could use it to obtain plans of the next bank they are planning to rob.

Apart from these extreme cases, psychologists warn that there are reasons why we should be a little wary of devices like these.

Think, for instance, of the ubiquitous MP3 and MP4 players: everywhere we go, there are people plugged in to their players, oblivious of the world around them. Others have become so addicted to their mobile phones that they cannot concentrate on face-to-face conversations without simultaneously checking their messages.

As our wearable computer bombards us with all kinds of data in real time, our brain may experience information overload, which can lead to stress and anxiety.

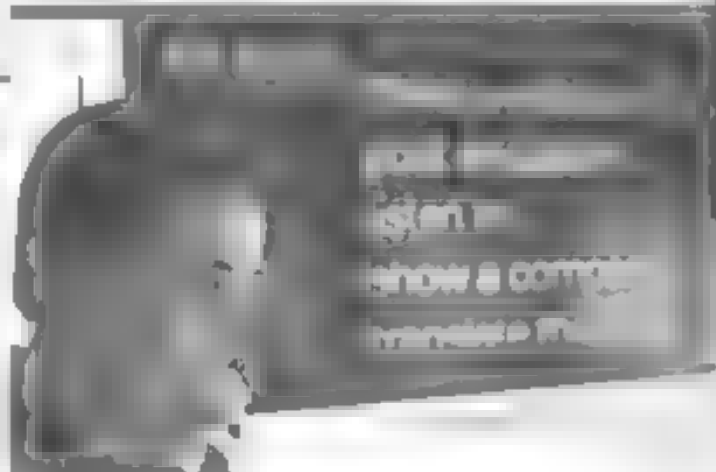
Moreover, if we become too reliant on always being updated about any situation, we run the risk of feeling insecure and out of control the moment we cannot get this information.

For the moment, we needn't worry too much.

And when they do become available, will people still be comfortable viewing the world in such a different way? Will you suddenly find reasons to be scared?

GLOSSARY

device	technological tool often used in computing
optical head-mounted display	device with an optical display (lens, screen), worn as part of a helmet, visor or glasses
groundbreaking	original and innovative
impaired	disabled, or experiencing difficulties
reliant	dependent on



2 Read the text. What is the main point the author makes about this technology?

- A will revolutionize and improve our lives.
- B is intrusive and potentially dangerous.
- C will be expensive and only for a small, exclusive minority.
- D has great potential, but needs to be used with caution.

3 Read the text again and complete gaps 1–6 with sentences A–G. There is one extra sentence you do not need to use.

- A Moreover, it gives rise to security concerns as well.
- B It will probably be some time before such devices become readily available to consumers at an affordable price.
- C The advantages for consumers far outweigh the disadvantages.
- D New technologies that have been devised to enhance the way we experience reality may end up cutting us off from real life instead.
- E There are moments when we should just sit back and watch the clouds, without immediately receiving the latest weather forecast.
- F They also love the fact that it captures great moments with family or friends that might otherwise have remained unrecorded, for lack of a camera or mobile phone at hand.
- G The device can be controlled by pressing it, or using voice commands.

4 Choose the correct answers.

The wearable computer responds to

- A manual orders only.
- B both manual and spoken orders.
- C the wearer's eye movements.

2 Which of these is not said about the device?

- A It can help you deal with foreign languages.
- B It can take photographs of everything you see.
- C It can protect your eyes from bright light.

3 What do psychologists say about the use of technology?

- A Things that are supposed to improve our lives don't always do so.
- B People waste a lot of time because they don't know how to use them.
- C People lose concentration more easily these days.

4 What is meant by *information overload*?

- A The information people receive is not uploaded properly.
- B People receive too much unnecessary information.
- C People don't always receive the latest information.

VOCABULARY

Collective & partitive nouns

5 For each line, cross out the word that does not go with the words in bold.

- 1 a bunch of: flowers, tissues, grapes, bananas
- 2 a slice of: ham, pie, biscuit, bread
- 3 a packet of: cigarettes, milk, biscuits, crisps
- 4 a bar of: chocolate, bread, soap, gold
- 5 a flock of: sheep, geese, flamingos, dogs
- 6 a herd of: cattle, ants, elephants, cows
- 7 a piece of: cheese, cake, jam, chocolate
- 8 a swarm of: bees, wasps, seagulls, locusts
- 9 a speck of: dust, light, mice, rain

6 Which of the words you crossed out in exercise 5 combine with these?

- 1 A loaf of
- 2 A jar of
- 3 A box of
- 4 A carton of
- 5 A pack of

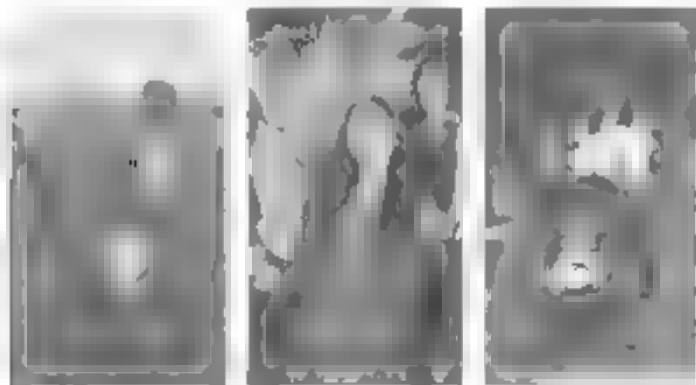
7 Answer the questions, using vocabulary from exercises 5 and 6.

- 1 What could you give your mother on Mother's Day?
- 2 A group of which insects can destroy farmers' crops?
- 3 What might you get in your eye that could hurt a bit?
- 4 What do you use to wash your hands?

8 Look back at Verb Zone in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 4.

9 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the multi-part verbs from exercise 8.

- 1 I _____ that actor but don't know that much about him.
- 2 They used sophisticated devices _____ the embassy staff.
- 3 Thanks for your email. It was really great _____ you.
- 4 I _____ the party from a friend – it sounded great.
- 5 I always _____ new tracks on the radio in case I want to download them later.



1 Answer the questions about the people, using future continuous and your own ideas.

1 Joe is a footballer. Matches are normally on Saturday afternoon at 3pm.
What will Joe be doing on Saturday at 2.30pm, at 3.30pm and at 7pm?

2 Carmen is an university student in Madrid.
What will she be doing on Thursday at 10am, on Saturday at 11pm and on Sunday at 11am?

3 Julia is the mother of a six-month old baby.
What will she be doing on Wednesday at 3pm and at 9pm, and on Thursday night at 3am?

2 How will the lives of the people below have changed this time next year? Write optimistic predictions using future perfect.

Carlos has been unemployed for six months.
This time next year, Carlos

2 Eva is pregnant

3 Liam is a law student in his final year

4 Ali's band are practising a lot

5 Ian and Sabela are engaged

6 Peter is almost 65 and has been working for 45 years.

3 Complete the dialogues with the verbs in brackets in future perfect or future continuous.

1 Meg and Nico are looking at the itinerary for their honeymoon.

Meg: Just imagine Nico, this time next week we
I _____ (not work)
- we'll _____ (take)
photographs of wildlife!

Nico: Not on Wednesday. Our safari

I _____ (not start)
yet. We'll _____
(still lie) on the beaches of Zanzibar and we
_____ (enjoy) our
vacations!

2 Mia and Robert are talking about the end of their courses.

Mia: Next Friday I'll _____
(travel) to my parents' house in Recife.
And at lunchtime on Saturday, I
I'll _____ (eat)
buchada - my mum's a great cook. And I
I'll _____ (dance) in clubs
with my friends every night for the next couple of
weeks. What about you?

Robert: I'll _____ (not go)
anywhere. I'll
(stay) in Rio all summer because I have to study.
Then, hopefully, by the end of September I
I'll _____ (finish) my
final project.

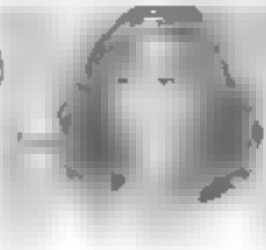
3 Jane and Phil are chatting in the office.

Jane: This is so boring. I wonder if
I'll _____ (start) doing the
same work next year. What do you think, Phil?

Phil: I'm sure I'll
(find) a better job by then. I
I'll _____ (not write) stupid
reports for the rest of my life. By the time I'm 60, I
I'll _____ (set up) my own
company and I'll be rich!

Jane: And obviously, you
I'll _____ (hire) me to be
your Personal Assistant!

EXTRA CHALLENGE



Match arguments for and against A–H to predictions 1–4.

- 1 In the future, people will need to eat insects because there won't be enough food for everyone.
 In _____ Against _____
- 2 Universities will cease to exist and all students will study online.
 In _____ Against _____
- 3 Chinese will overtake English as the language of international communication and commerce.
 In _____ Against _____
- 4 Advances in medicine will enable people to remain young and beautiful until they're 80.
 In _____ Against _____

- A Judging by the example of many celebrities, this seems highly likely.
- B Why not? Globally, it's already the first language for well over a billion people.
- C Fair enough – it'll be a lot more economical that way.
- D There are still many diseases we'll have to eradicate beforehand.
- E Rising food prices, population growth and environmental concerns make this a viable alternative.
- F If you ask me, nobody would ever finish their degree.
- G Although they are nutritious, they don't appeal to everyone and may take a lot of getting used to.
- H It won't work – it takes too long to learn.

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

- What did people watch via the first ever CCTV camera?
- Name three countries that don't have an identity card.
- Which 1982 film was adapted from a novel by Philip K Dick?
- Name two animals that can be found in schools.
- Give an example of what can be measured by behavioural biometric technology.
- What colour are most passports of countries in the European Union?

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. What do you think Greg said? Why might he and Gary be carrying these things?



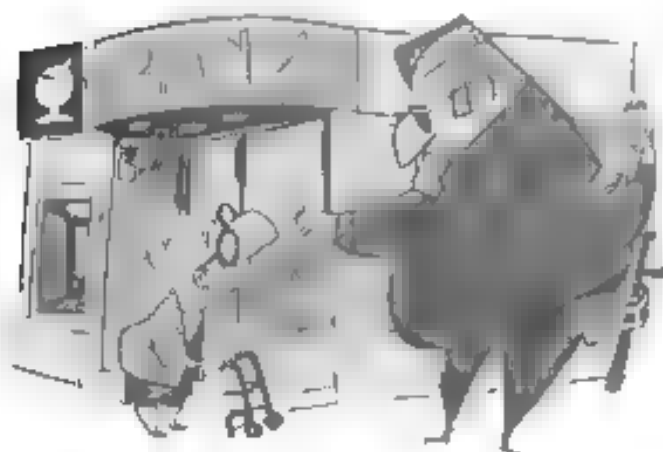
INTERACTION

Describing people and places

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say ...

- to introduce something else you saw?
- when you are not sure about something?
- when you're speculating about people?



- 2 Complete the dialogue between a police officer and a woman who witnessed a bank robbery, using expressions in the box. Listen and check.

What else did you notice? Could you describe them?
don't remember looking for clues make out
can't be certain if there might have been four

Police officer: Now then madam, you were in the bank at the time. Did you witness the whole thing?

Woman: That's what I said.

Police officer: So, how many robbers were there?

Woman: I'd say at least three. No, wait a minute.

Police officer: And what were they wearing?

Woman: The kind of clothes bank robbers usually wear: tight-fitting black trousers and tops.

Police officer: And what about their faces?

Woman: I couldn't see their faces. I think they were wearing ski masks.

Police officer: Do you think they were men or women?

Woman: I think there were any women, but at least two of them were men. They were extremely tall and muscular. They could be body builders.

Police officer: Any distinctive features perhaps?

Woman: I don't think so, or at least, I shouldn't have seen any. Shouldn't the bank's security cameras have recorded all this?

Police officer: They appear to have been switched off.

Woman: Well, young man, shouldn't you be bothering old ladies?

- 3 Find words or expressions in the dialogue that mean:

- to observe or see something happen
- clothes that are worn close to the body
- to see clearly
- characteristics
- to disturb or trouble someone

- 4 Join the halves of the sentences.

- They left absolutely no fingerprints - whoever did this ...
- The get-away car appears to have been
- The police can't be certain if
- He might have been an accomplice
- He could be

- parked in a street nearby
- they acted alone
- a security guard
- who helped them get in
- must be a professional

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 5 Revise the Express yourself box on page 48 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

An opinion essay



1 Making people take off their shoes, belts and watches
takes up a lot of time
2 Making citizens data is an invasion of privacy
3 Freedom of speech is a universal human right

- A Nevertheless, if it's used to insult or bully others anonymously, the authorities should have the right to take measures.
- B However, if a law-governments to keep track of suspected terrorists, have no objections against it.
- C Nevertheless, if it prevents just one terrorist from smuggling explosives on board, I think it's worth it.

everyone should have the right to be anonymous online

2. Airport security is far too strict these days.

surveillance scrutiny

© 2004 IBM Corp. All rights reserved. IBM, the IBM logo, and "Think" are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation. Other names and brands may be the trademarks of their respective owners.

11. The following table shows the number of people who attended the 2004 Summer Olympics in Athens, Greece, by country. The data are given in thousands of people.

It is the liberties, freedoms, rights, and evidence
proof of state, unlawful, criminal, and state

[illegible]

© 2000 Blackwell Science Ltd *Journal of Internal Medicine* 247: 399–406

Sebenius (1696)

23.00	44	random	indiscriminate	colloq. 23
-------	----	--------	----------------	------------

Monitoring detecting malware

11000 conversations and at risk whether innocent

⁴ This is an interestingly misleading and

EXPENSES: 17,725.00

“Any ‘spontaneous’ government” resources should be used to a more
sustainable and

After we went

governments saw a duty to take measures to prevent
national security. Resisting an innocent person, an over-
allly safe surveillance society. Overall it's not a good
idea for citizens → exchange freedom for security.

- 3 Read the essay and rewrite the first sentence in the final paragraph, using *I acknowledge* and *Nevertheless / However*.
- 4 Choose the most suitable words in bold in the essay. In which cases are both words possible?
- 5 Complete the essay with the adverbs in the box.

easily extremely simply strongly ultimately

- 6** Read the Writing Reference on page 116. Choose the topic you'd like to write an essay about and follow the instructions.

- Parents should monitor their children's use of the internet
- Companies have the right to access and read employees' emails
- It is acceptable for internet companies like Google to hand over user data to the government

- 1 Use the essay on this page as a model
 - 2 Start with the essay title and then follow this plan
- Paragraph 1 – introduce the topic and say if you agree or disagree
- Paragraph 2 – give an argument explaining your position and develop it with reasons and / or examples
- Paragraph 3 – give another argument for your position
- Paragraph 4 – give an argument against your position, followed by a counter argument; conclude by stating your overall opinion

Reminder

Give at least one argument against your position

- Make sure your counter arguments are logical

READING

- 1 Look at the photos. Where do you think these people live and what are they famous for? Read the first paragraph of the text and check your answers.

The weirdest hairdo!



Two motorbike taxis took us up the steep and windy road that leads from Suga in south-west China to the village of Longa, in the heart of Long Horn Territory. Ever since we had seen their photos on the Internet, we had been obsessed with this mysterious sub-group of the Miao ethnic minority and the striking hairstyle they are known for.

As soon as we got off the bikes, we were greeted by a horde of women and children, dressed in the traditional costume of embroidered jackets and skirts, though it was obvious that many had jeans and sneakers on underneath. To our disappointment, none were wearing any horns, but they all offered to do their hair for us. For a fee, of course!

Each female attached a large wooden comb in the shape of a half moon to the back of her head, with the two sides sticking out like horns. Then they began winding long, thick strands of hair around the comb, forming a figure eight, until most of it was covered. Finally, they kept the heavy mass of hair in place by tying white ribbons around it.

Originally the combs were real animal horns, and the hair came from the tribe's ancestors, but these days they use a mix of dyed hemp, wool and human hair. Whether the hair was real or not, the result was certainly eye-catching. Within minutes, all the women and girls were sporting weird-looking, top-heavy, black mounds, and they were ready to pose for us.

Although these days the Long Horns mostly put on their head-dresses for tourists, their hairdos and costumes used to be an important part of the tribe's identity. Young girls learnt to weave, make batik cloth and embroider the tribe's special patterns. Any hard-working girl who stood out in these skills would be assured of a good marriage.

Once the photo session was over, the women and girls fell on us again, clamouring for their money, but in a good-natured way. It wasn't exactly the authentic experience we had wished for, but we had to admit it was quite fun.

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

- 1 What do we learn about the Long Horn Miao's style of dress?
 - A They still dress like their ancestors
 - B They combine traditional and modern items
 - C They wear traditional costumes of jackets and trousers
 - D They wear horns in their hair
- 2 According to the text, the Long Horn Miao show their special hairdo to tourists because
 - A they want to earn some money
 - B they are proud of it
 - C they want to teach tourists about their traditions
 - D they like posing for photos
- 3 What else is said about their special hairdo?
 - A It is made entirely of the hair of their forefathers
 - B It consists of eight parts
 - C It is a mixture of fake and real hair
 - D It is wound around an animal horn
- 4 In the past, young girls from the tribe
 - A used to work in tourism as we
 - B were much more hard-working and skilled
 - C wore the horn at the time
 - D learnt dress-making skills to catch a good husband
- 5 How do the tourists feel about their experience?
 - A It was everything they had hoped for
 - B It was much better than they had thought
 - C It wasn't what they expected, but they enjoyed it anyway
 - D It was extremely disappointing



Compound adjectives with -ing

- 3 Look at the text again. Find three compound adjectives with -ing and match them to the descriptions.

- 1 with a strange appearance
- 2 spectacular and striking
- 3 the opposite of lazy

4 Answer the question with your own opinion.

Is it acceptable for tourists to pay local people to dress up and take their photo? Why / Why not?

VOCABULARY

Medicine & surgery

- 5 Complete the text with the correct forms of the words in the box.

patient needle pillow
surgery have surgery area

1. The doctor was very kind. He was very gentle with the patient.
2. The patient was very anxious about the surgery.
3. The doctor was very careful when he was operating.
4. The patient was very calm during the surgery.
5. The doctor was very kind to the patient.
6. The patient was very happy to see the doctor.
7. The doctor was very professional in his work.
8. The patient was very cooperative with the doctor.
9. The doctor was very experienced in his work.
10. The patient was very relaxed during the surgery.

Also, recent research has been approved for the use of a number of health problems. It can alleviate chronic migraine headaches. It can also be used to treat areas around the temples, forehead, neck and shoulders. The drug is available in a cream, which is applied to the skin. It is also available in a pill form. The drug is very effective. It is also very safe. It is also very easy to use. It is also very cheap. It is also very popular. It is also very well known. It is also very famous. It is also very well liked. It is also very well respected. It is also very well loved. It is also very well appreciated. It is also very well valued. It is also very well cherished. It is also very well treasured. It is also very well honored. It is also very well revered. It is also very well respected. It is also very well loved. It is also very well appreciated. It is also very well valued. It is also very well cherished. It is also very well treasured. It is also very well honored. It is also very well revered.

- 6 Tick the sentences that are correct and change the incorrect ones.

- 1 A surgeon works in an operating circus. ☐
- 2 A local anesthetic is used to make a patient unconscious. ☐
- 3 A needle is used to make an incision. ☐
- 4 If you are undergoing an operation, you are the patient. ☐
- 5 If you have a deep cut, you may need stitches. ☐
- 6 People with very big noses may choose to have an enlargement. ☐
- 7 People who choose to have a face lift do so for medical reasons. ☐
- 8 A syringe can be used to extract blood from a patient. ☐

- 7 Answer the questions with your own opinions.

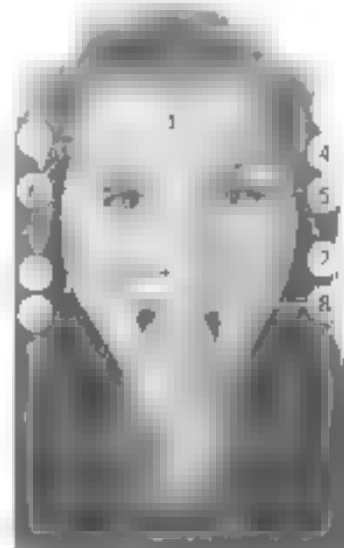
- 1 Have you ever had stitches? What happened?
- 2 Would you ever consider having cosmetic surgery? Why / Why not?
- 3 Would you like to work as a doctor? Why / Why not?

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

The body

- 8 Match the words with parts of the body.

ankle	—	elbow	—	thigh
arm/pit	—	heel	—	throat
calf	—	shin	—	waist
chest	—	shoulder	—	wrist



- 9 Match the words with parts of the face.

cheek	—	eyelid	—	nostril
chin	—	forehead	—	temple
eyebrow	—	jaw	—	
eyelash	—	lip	—	

- 10 Circle the correct words.

- 1 I must have eaten something bad. I've got a terrible stomach ache / pain.
- 2 I felt a sharp ache / pain in my foot when I stepped on the piece of glass.
- 3 My skin aches / hurts where I burnt it.
- 4 I hurt / ached my back when I tried to lift that heavy box.
- 5 Elderly people usually suffer from different aches and pains / hurts.
- 6 My mum regularly has headaches and the pain / hurt can last for hours.

- 11 Complete the rules with ache / pain / hurt.

- 1 We can use the verb _____ to indicate that we feel pain in some part of our body.
- 2 The verb _____ is used more for a continuous, dull pain.
- 3 The word _____ is only a noun and not a verb.
- 4 The verb _____ can be used with a direct object.
- 5 The word _____ is often used as a noun in combination with various parts of the body.

1 Answer the questions using the second conditional.

How would life be different if

1 we didn't have laptops or tablets?
if we didn't

2 there weren't any universities?
if there

3 we didn't use money?
if

4 everyone lived to a hundred?

5 no-one had to work?

6 you went to live abroad?

2 Read the story and write five sentences about things that would / could / might have happened if the situation had been different. Use the third conditional.

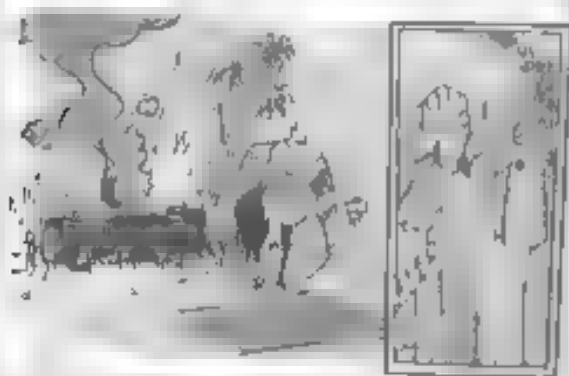
1 if Arthur hadn't

2

3

4

5



Arthur was very good at science, so he decided to study medicine. He finished his degree with brilliant marks and went on to become a surgeon. One summer, while he was doing some voluntary work in Africa, he witnessed a terrible accident. A bus crashed into a big lorry and both vehicles caught fire. Police officers, firemen and volunteers all rushed to the scene. Arthur went to help as well. He saw a young woman who was trapped underneath the bus and he managed to pull her out. The woman was alive, but her skin had been badly burnt.

Arthur paid for her transport to the hospital where he was working and personally operated on her, repairing the damage to her skin. Once the young lady, whose name was Felice, had recovered, she and Arthur got married!

3 Choose the correct answers.

1 If my parents hadn't met,

A wouldn't have been born
B wouldn't born

C didn't born
D wasn't born

2 Unless they
wouldn't go there

A would pay
B didn't pay

me a lot of money,
C paid
D had paid

3 If my father was offered the job, he

A will take
B might have taken

C might take
D took

4 If the plane _____ delayed, I wouldn't have missed my connection

A wouldn't be
B wouldn't have been

C had been
D hadn't been

5 I would still have a good time, even if it _____ during the holidays

A had rained
B rained

C would rain
D might rain

6 I'm not sure what I would do with the money

I _____ travelling

A would have gone
B might go

C would go
D could

4 Tick the correct sentences and change the incorrect ones.

1 When Tom got to the class, the exam already started

2 I wouldn't take another job unless it was better paid

3 The mountaineers might survive if they had been found earlier

4 Unless he didn't tell me himself, I wouldn't believe it

5 If I were you, I wouldn't drink that water. It looks dirty

6 I would panic if I got stuck in a lift

7 If I had able to study something different, I would have studied law

8 If she had knew he was coming to the party, she would have stayed at home

9 The plane could have crashed if the pilot hadn't reacted so quickly

10 If the weather would be nice, I might go to the beach.

LISTENING



- 1 You are going to listen to a radio phone-in. Four people ask Dr Flo's advice on different health and beauty matters. Before you listen, match the words from the recording to the definitions.

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 1 scratch | 5 dye |
| 2 harm | 6 harmful |
| 3 kind | 7 risky |
| 4 suddenly | 8 break down |

- A growing thinly and in an irregular way
 B damaging to your health
 C in bad taste
 D change the colour of something, like hair
 E long stick that helps you walk after you've hurt your leg
 F an organ that produces a substance that is used by the body
 G produce drops of liquid
 H divide into small pieces that can be eliminated more easily

- 2 Listen and match the four callers to problems A-D.

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| Caller 1 | A Hair |
| Caller 2 | B Sweat |
| Caller 3 | C Arthritis |
| Caller 4 | D Tattoo |

- 3 Listen again and choose the correct answer.

- Caller 1 is
 A anxious about the procedure his grandmother has to undergo
 B concerned about his grandfather's operation
 C worried about his grandmother who can't walk
- 2 Dr Flo replies that
 A the operation is risky but quite common
 B younger people than his grandmother have had the same operation
 C the operation is a routine procedure.

- 3 Caller 2 believes that his problem
 A is related to hygiene
 B makes people look down on him
 C is bad for his professional image

- Dr Flo tells caller 2 about ...
 A a treatment that can cure him
 B a treatment that can suppress the sweating for a while
 C a treatment that is temporary, but quite economical

- 5 Caller 3 has problems with her hair because
 A she has a lack of vitamins
 B she uses the wrong shampoo
 C she has changed the colour too often

- Dr Flo's initial solution doesn't convince caller 3 because
 A it'll take too long
 B she wants to continue using her hair dryer
 C she doesn't like natural products.

- 7 Caller 4 thinks his problem is
 A a bit unusual
 B fairly common
 C highly embarrassing

- Dr Flo's first reaction indicates that
 A people often regret getting a tattoo with the name of a boyfriend / girlfriend
 B the problem can be solved quite easily
 C people should think more carefully before getting a tattoo

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

- 4 Answer the questions.

- What does the grandmother of caller 1 need?
- What is the profession of caller 2?
- What is the name of the treatment Dr Flo recommends for caller 2 and how is it administered?
- Why is caller 3 so worried about her hair?
- What does the girlfriend of caller 4 think of tattoos?

- 5 Write these sentences in your language.

- I've got a bit of a problem. It's quite embarrassing actually.
- Never mind the cost.
- It turns out my girlfriend hates tattoos.

READING

- 1 Look at the title of the text and the eight photos. Try to guess how the photos are connected and group them into four pairs.

A hairy business

Read on and find out just how versatile and lucrative hair can be

A We're all familiar with the image of a rider on horseback, wearing one of those broad-brimmed hats, known as cowboy hats or sombreros in Spanish-speaking countries. Well-known as the hats are, if someone asked us what they're made of, we would probably get it wrong. The best-quality cowboy hats are made of felt, a material that looks and feels like woollen fabric, though smoother and tougher. Felt is actually made of animal hair, in particular rabbit hair, which apparently never deteriorates. Besides being strong, it's also an extremely light and resilient material. Most importantly, it's much more water-resistant than other materials like wool, because the animal fibres interlock very closely and don't absorb moisture.

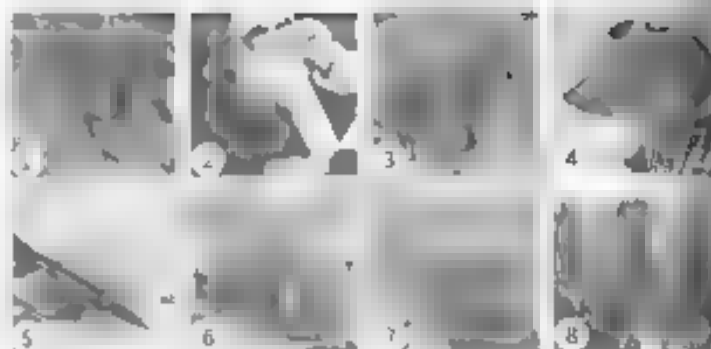
B Aptly described by the Chinese as hairy cows, yaks are cattle-like animals similar to oxen which mainly live in high altitude Tibetan areas. They're covered in a thick mat of black and white hair, with long horns and a hairy tail. Yaks are vital to the Tibetan herders' survival: they can be ridden, used to carry goods, and

they provide meat, hair and fur. The hair from their soft undercoat is spun into wool for sweaters, or turned into felt for boots, bags, blankets and tents in China, while yak hair is used in wigs and beards for traditional opera, while the white tips of tails are popular as ornamental tassels. In the United States, yak hair was used for Santa Claus beards.

C Human hair is big business these days. Customers in the West crave long hair for wigs and hair extensions, while Chinese companies need hair to extract amino acids. Most of this hair is exported from India. Traditionally, Indian women have very long hair. According to importers, Indian hair is also the strongest, glossiest and most beautiful. A large percentage comes from temples, where it is customary and auspicious for pilgrims to have their heads shaved, hence the name Temple Hair. Some 18 million devotees visit the southern temple of Venkateshwara

every year, which is more than Madrid or Rome. They leave behind over 25 tonnes of hair, which can fetch up to £4 million for the temple's charities.

D Many people were shocked by the recent discovery of traces of horsemeat in different food products. Culturally, many Westerners are put off by the thought of eating horses, which are seen as domestic animals for riding and other forms of recreation. However, horses have always had other uses. Horse hair – the long, coarse hair of horses' tails and manes – is still widely used for brushes for painting anything, from walls to pictures for art galleries or calligraphy. Horsehair brushes are smooth and can soak up a lot of paint, enabling the painter to continue working for longer. Other common applications of horsehair are in violin bows and string instruments, or even fishing lines.



GLOSSARY

resilient	strong but flexible; able to return to its original shape
spin	convert wool, cotton or silk into thread for making cloth
crave	have a strong desire for
fetch	sell for a particular price
soak up	absorb liquid

VOCABULARY

Expressions with get

2 Read the text quickly and check your ideas for exercise 1.

3 Put the headings in the correct places in the text.

- 1 A rabbit to hat
- 2 A rabbit to hat
- 3 A rabbit to hat
- 4 A rabbit to hat

4 Match the questions to paragraphs A-D.

Which paragraph mentions

- 1 a Western traditional celebration?
- 2 a material that can be used in industry?
- 3 a material that is quite waterproof?
- 4 a surprising find?
- 5 a religious custom?
- 6 a material that is often mistaken for something else?
- 7 something of interest to musicians?
- 8 some uses of a particular colour?
- 9 a material that can provide shelter?
- 10 a profitable business?

5 Tick the sentences that are true and correct the false ones.

- 1 Nowadays, cowboy hats are exclusively made of felt.
- 2 Wool is stronger but less water-resistant than felt.
- 3 Yaks are related to the animal family that includes cows and bulls.
- 4 Yaks are mostly kept for their hair.
- 5 The Venkateshwara Temple is as most as popular as Rome or Mecca.
- 6 And pilgrims sell their hair to the temple.
- 7 Horsehair brushes are only used by artists.
- 8 With horsehair brushes, painters needn't interrupt their work so often.

6 The adjectives *smooth*, *tough*, *glossy* and *coarse* are used in the text to describe hair. Cross out the words they cannot be combined with.

- 1 smooth: skin, sea, cactus, landing, transition
- 2 tough: guy, skin, pillow, meat, situation
- 3 glossy: magazine, sand, photo, boots, brochure
- 4 coarse: hands, skin, material, manners, water

7 Complete the questions with the correct form of get and answer them.

- 1 Do you need a lot of time _____ ready in the morning?
- 2 How long does it take you _____ to school?
- 3 When was the last time you _____ really angry? What happened?
- 4 What's a good website for _____ presents?
- 5 Do you ever have to _____ lunch or dinner for your family?
- 6 Can you think of any problems in your country that are better? Or worse?

8 Match the sentences from exercise 7 to the correct meaning of get

- 1 become _____
- 2 arrive _____
- 3 buy _____
- 4 make _____

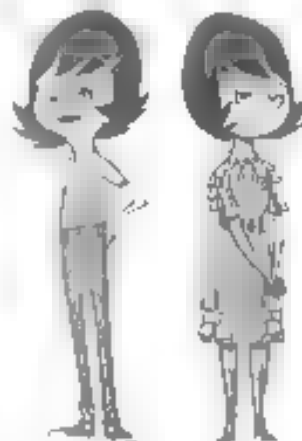
9 Look back at Verb Zone in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 5.

10 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs from exercise 9.

I've got a twin sister and, like most identical twins, we really _____ each other. But apart from our appearance, we're very different.

I _____ rather _____ than _____, we're both very quiet and a bit shy. But not my sister! She just loves _____ and _____ be the centre of attention. I don't think I could _____ that.

She's also really into clothes. Personally, I think some of her outfits are a bit outrageous. I prefer to wear jeans, like most of my friends and _____ with the _____.



- 1 Complete the sentences with suitable verbs from the box in the past simple.

can earn not be know speak

- 1 I wish I _____ so short. Then I'd be better at basketball.
- 2 If only I _____ French! I'd be able to understand the films without subtitles.
- 3 I wish I _____ more money, so I could buy a house.
- 4 If only I _____ how to dance. Then I could impress my friends at the party.
- 5 I wish I _____ take a gap year to travel around the world.

- 2 What do these people regret? Write a sentence about each picture, using the past perfect.



1 He wishes _____



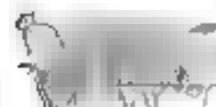
2 She wishes _____



3 They wish _____



4 She wishes _____



5 They wish _____

- 3 How would you like these people or situations to change? Write sentences with *wish* + *would* / *wouldn't* + infinitive.

- 1 My little brother is always taking my tablet.
- 2 My sister never stops talking and I can't concentrate.
- 3 My dad keeps telling me to tidy my room.
- 4 It's been raining for three days and I'm fed up with it.
- 5 I really like one of the girls in my history class, but she never speaks to me.

- 4 Join the pairs of sentences, using the third conditional.

- 1 The company took no measures. It went bankrupt.
- 2 The police let the terrorist go. He blew up a building.
- 3 I didn't set my alarm clock. I overslept.
- 4 He didn't wear a suit to the interview. He made a poor impression.
- 5 The government didn't warn residents about the storm. They didn't evacuate their houses.

- 5 Rewrite the third conditional sentences from exercise 4 using inversion.

- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____

- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 I wish your dad _____ (stop) smoking.
- 2 If only I _____ (not have to) work this weekend.
- 3 If only we _____ (know) we were going to snow.
- 4 I wish you _____ (take) your mobile.
- 5 Juan wishes he _____ (not get) that tattoo.
- 6 If only we _____ (not paint) the room that horrible colour.
- 7 Mike wishes his wife _____ (not spend) so much on clothes.
- 8 I wish my friend Tatiana _____ (find) a job.

- 7 Complete the sentences about you.

- 1 I wish I _____ were just a little _____ then.
- 2 If I hadn't _____ then _____
- 3 If only I had _____ at the party.
- 4 Had my parents known _____ they would _____
- 5 I wish my friends wouldn't always _____

Match the beginnings of fairy tales 1-4 to endings A-D.

1. *The witch plans to eat them, but the prince and princess* *She must leave before midnight when the spell ends. Otherwise*

2. *The prince and princess* *are imprisoned in the forest by their father because*

3. *The prince puts it up and takes it on every mountain in the country. When he finally finds his love, they get married*

4. *When the witch finds out the princesses are put to a dream and binds the prince extremely, after a lot of suffering, they are reunited*

EXTRA CHALLENGE

A. *The witch plans to eat them, but the prince and princess* *She must leave before midnight when the spell ends. Otherwise*

B. *The prince and princess* *are imprisoned in the forest by their father because*

C. *The prince puts it up and takes it on every mountain in the country. When he finally finds his love, they get married*

D. *When the witch finds out the princesses are put to a dream and binds the prince extremely, after a lot of suffering, they are reunited*

Now match the heroines (Snow White, Rapunzel, Cinderella and Gretel) to the fairy tales. What are the fairy tales called in your language?

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

1. Which fairy tale has been filmed in 10 different languages?
2. Which fairy tale has been filmed in 10 different languages?
3. Find four types of dangers that grow in the dark forests in the Grimm's fairy tales.
4. Which fairy tale inspired the 2010 Disney film, a adaptation of?
5. Which fairy tale did the 18th-century English writer write for five weeks in 1857?
6. Who is 'The World's Most Pierced Woman'?

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. What do you think these expressions mean? Check in a dictionary

to cramp someone's style

to be born yesterday



INTERACTION

Resolving a conflict

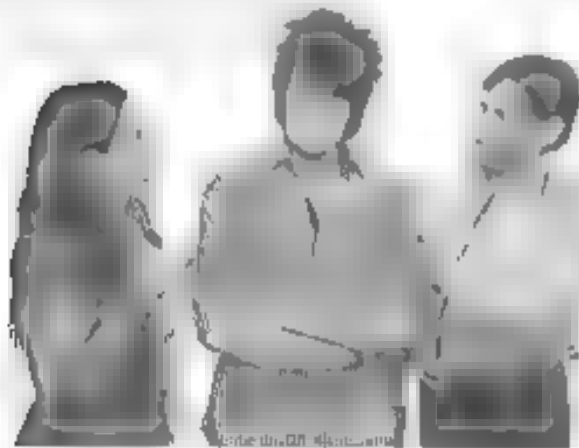
- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say

- when you are very surprised by someone's actions
- when you refuse someone permission to do something
- to convince someone that something is important

- 2 Ricardo is trying to persuade his parents to let him go to a concert. Complete the conversation with words and expressions in the box. Listen and check.

no way in the world fit in That's a bit rich
no big deal What's the world coming to
very surprised go on to get upset



Ricardo: Mum, Dad, can I ask you something?

Mum: Sure. _____

Ricardo: Can I go to a concert this weekend?

Dad: What kind of concert?

Ricardo: The heavy metal one that's on at the park.

Dad: No, sorry. There's _____
I'll allow you to go there. There are always lots of
drugs at those events, and people getting drunk
and aggressive.

Mum: _____ coming from
you. You're always playing those old rock vinyls of
yours.

Dad: That's different. We're talking real music there,
not some infernal noise.

Ricardo: Oh Dad, keep your shirt on. Everybody in my class
is going. A concert is _____.
Why do I always have to be the odd one out?
No wonder I don't!

Mum: Let's talk to a friend about it. _____ family Ricardo. There's
no need _____ What
about Mandy? That nice girl you've been seeing.

Ricardo: She's going too.

Mum: Really? _____ to
hear that. And what do her parents think about
it? Aren't they concerned?

Ricardo: Concerned? They are playing at the concert.
They're one of the main acts.

Dad: Good heavens!

- 3 Find words or expressions in the conversation that mean

- that someone's being hypocritical
- continue
- dating someone
- become emotional and offended
- a group of performers or musicians
- a person who is different from the rest of the group

- 4 What does the expression *Keep your shirt on* mean?

- Don't get undressed
- Calm down – don't get angry
- Don't interrupt

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 5 Ricardo. Revise the *Express Yourself* box on page 68 of the
Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

WRITING

A for and against essay

Tentative language

- 1 Rewrite the statements to make them sound more tentative, using *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *possible*, *potential*. Choose a different word each time.

Actors who are attractive will get more roles

- 2 Bad weather conditions have been mentioned as the cause of the accident.

- 3 Employment opportunities won't improve until economic conditions get better.

- 4 Ageing nuclear power plants are a danger to public safety.

- 5 The use of pesticides leads to the destruction of wildlife.

- 2 Read the essay and circle the correct words in bold to make it more tentative.

Teenagers to have plastic surgery



Increasingly, more and more teenagers decide to have plastic surgery. Some of the most popular procedures include nose jobs, the correction of protruding chins, lower eye surgery or the removal of scars caused by acne or injuries.

Many look to plastic surgery as an easy way to improve their appearance and in this is **possibly** **certainly** because young people **will be** **can be**.

Often, they **may** **must** laugh or joke about the size or shape of someone's nose without a moment's thought that person's feelings.

Some teenagers have started

thinking their lives will be much better when noses, ears, skin, etc. are different.

Teenagers should be encouraged to

be potential **probable** complications or affect any involved in any operation.

They should realize that

surgery alone **might not** **could not** solve their problems. Teenagers who

are insecure about the way they look, or who are being bullied at school,

may become popular overnight just because their ears have been pinned back.

Not all teenagers who are

unhappy about their looks need to go in for an operation. There **might be**

have to be other solutions like skincare, cosmetics or clothing advice. At the

same time, teenagers should **only** have plastic surgery if they are convinced it will

increase their self-confidence and make them feel better. However, they ought

to make their own decisions, without pressure from family or friends.

They should make sure the surgeon

is highly qualified and experienced.

- 3 Complete gaps 1-5 in the essay with the expressions in the box.

Even so Furthermore Not surprisingly
Last but not least Obviously

- 4 Read the Writing Reference on page 117. Your teacher has asked you to write a for and against essay about one of the topics below. Choose the topic you would like to write about and follow the instructions.

Do people spend too much time and money on their appearance?

Should people have plastic surgery in order to stay looking young?

Is it acceptable for people to have plastic surgery, even if there is nothing wrong with their appearance at all?

- 1 Use the essay on this page as a model.
- 2 Start with the essay title and then follow this plan:
Paragraph 1 – introduce the topic.
Paragraph 2 – give some arguments for.
Paragraph 3 – give some arguments against.
Paragraph 4 – conclude with your own idea: are you for or against the topic discussed?

Reminder

- Use some tentative language where appropriate. Use suitable linking words to add and contrast information, or to express an opinion.

READING

- 1 Read the title and first paragraph of the article. Then put the rest of the paragraphs in order.

Don't get caught!

1 Most internet users will have received unexpected emails from banks or retailers. Typically, these emails inform you that there has been a problem with your account, credit card, or the payment for an order you have placed. They may even frighten you by saying your bank account has been hacked into. Others claim that the company has had technical problems, or is updating its computer system.



Secondly, although these emails are sent out randomly, they may be received by people who have an account with that bank, or just bought something from the site mentioned, so they believe them to be genuine.

Unfortunately, what many people don't realize is that these are false links that redirect you to a website set up by scammers. These unscrupulous crooks now have access to your personal data and can use it to empty your bank account.

Whatever the reason given, you are then asked to re-confirm your identity and provide personal details. For this, you are directed to a link at the bottom of the email, requested to click on it and type in your ID and password.

What can people do to protect themselves? Treat all unknown emails with caution and read the link address carefully. If you are still in doubt, a quick phone call to the bank or retailer can save you a lot of grief.

Is there any way users can know a link is fake? Fortunately there is, though you'd hardly notice the difference if you hadn't been warned. Whereas the beginning of a genuine address reads <https://>, phishing links just have <http://> without the final [s](https://).

This means that you have fallen victim to *phishing* – an alternative spelling for 'fishing'. In other words, you have taken the bait – the email – and been caught. The ph spelling may have been inspired by the term phreaking, which is used for telephone hacking.

Why are people taken in by these scams? Firstly, such emails can look extremely realistic, imitating company logos and colours. Big company names such as Citibank, eBay or PayPal have all been used in this way. Scammers try very hard to make their work look authentic.

- 2 Answer the questions in your own words.

- 1 Name three reasons scammers give for contacting people.
- 2 How can scammers get hold of your personal data?
- 3 Can you explain why this scam is compared to going fishing?
- 4 What's the difference between a fake and an authentic link address?
- 5 Which two reasons are given why people fall for these scams?
- 6 What should you do if you receive a suspicious email?

Use of adverbs

- 3 Compare these two sentences from the text. Are the words in **bold** adjectives or adverbs? Link them to the correct meaning below.

1 You'd **hardly** notice the difference if you hadn't been warned.

2 Scammers try **very hard** to make their work look authentic.

very much
almost not

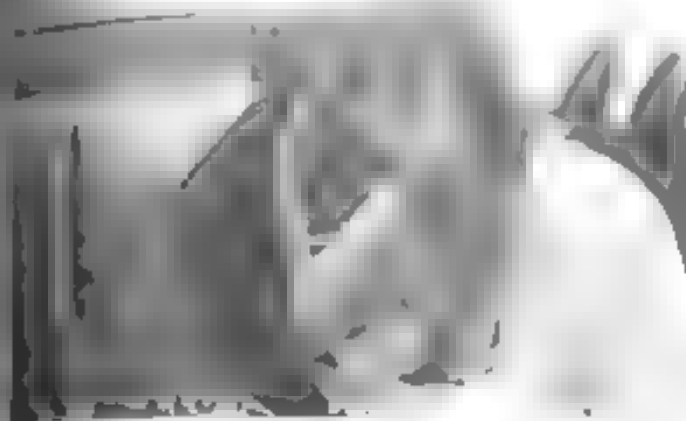
- 4 Find eight more adverbs that end in -ly in the article.

- 5 Answer the questions with your own opinions.

- 1 Have you ever received phishing emails?
- 2 Do you know anyone who has been a victim of a phishing scam?
- 3 What do you do to protect your computer and your data?

VOCABULARY

Connection problems



8 Match the words in bold to explanations A–K.

- 1 My files have been **deleted** and I've lost all my work.
 - 2 You can **top up** your mobile online, or from a cashpoint.
 - 3 Help! I think my computer's got a **virus**.
 - 4 If you can't **get a signal** when you're having an emergency, you're really in trouble.
 - 5 Some of my files have become **corrupted** and I can't open them.
 - 6 My DVD is frozen on an **image** and I can't get it to work.
 - 7 I can't **access** my email.
 - 8 I've recently updated my MP3 player and now it won't **sync** my music.
 - 9 I was trying to watch a programme online, but it keeps **buffering**.
 - 10 Our network has been **hacked into** and our data has been altered.
- A erased, eliminated
B set into
C on a thing and it for so it doesn't work properly any more
D linked, not moving
E automatically transfer songs from a computer library to an MP3 player
F have poor or no reception
G entered illegally
H put more money into
I temporary delays in the transmission
J a software programme that interferes with the working of a computer

7 Cross out the words that cannot be used before or after the words in bold.

- 1 **delete**: a photo, a paragraph, a credit card, a file
- 2 **top up**: your phone, your computer, your glass, the petrol (in your car)
- 3 **infect**: a wound, water, a laptop, a phone
- 4 **freeze**: water, an image, prices, a file
- 5 **access**: a building, a letter, a university, an account
- 6 **signal**: phone, hand, smoke, ear

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Telephones

8 Do the quiz. Then check your answers at the bottom of the page.



- 1 The telephone was invented by _____ in 1876 / 1922 / 1789.
- 2 Before mobile phones, most people had a fixed line in their home called a _____.
- 3 Mobile phones were first introduced to the public in 1951 / 1973 / 1964. At that time, they weighed ½ kg / 1 kg / 2 kg.
- 4 The US name for a mobile phone is a _____.
- 5 A mobile phone that you don't need to hold is a _____ phone.
- 6 What's the sound your phone makes when someone calls you?
- 7 Which multi-part verbs mean the following?
A to answer a call
B to finish a call
C to wait (2 verbs) _____ /
D to connect someone
E to be able to make contact with someone
F to be disconnected suddenly
G to return a call (3 verbs)
- 8 _____
H _____
I _____
- 8 The line is busy is the same as the line is _____.
- 9 If you often phone the same numbers, you can program a quicker way of calling them by using the _____.
- 10 Which of these is not a correct way to answer the phone? Cross it out.
This is Sandra / My name is Sandra / I am Sandra / Sandra speaking

GRAMMAR

Uses of could | Uses of be able to

1 Match the sentences to functions A-E.

- Could I check my email on your computer?
- My son could read when he was three years old.
- Could you help me set up my blog?
- If you buy a new laptop in the sales, you could save 30%.
- When I was a child, I could play outside whenever I wanted.

- A Making a request
- B Past ability
- C Past possibility
- D Asking for permission
- E Present or future possibility

2 Ask for permission or make a suitable request for each situation.

- It's really hot in the classroom. What do you ask your teacher?
- You left your wallet at home, so you haven't got money for a sandwich. What do you ask your friend?
- You don't think you'll be able to finish your essay on time.
- You want to know what time the last train leaves.

3 Circle the correct words.

- The fire destroyed the building, but fortunately everybody could / was able to escape.
- When Tom was little, he was able to / could run faster than anybody.
- Ferrer played very well, but in the end Nadal was able to / could beat him.
- The police officer chased the pickpocket, but unfortunately he could / was able to escape.
- Muhammad Ali was a great boxer. He could / was able to beat anybody.

4 Which sentences in exercise 3 refer to one particular situation in the past, and which refer to a general ability?

Particular situation
General ability

5 Complete the sentences about you.

- I could _____ when I was 7, but I couldn't _____.
- Once I was able to _____ but never again after that.
- I wish I could _____ because _____.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of be able to and match them to A-F.

- I'm afraid _____ come to the party on Saturday.
- Brokers need _____ work under pressure.
- We _____ book a hotel yet.
- You _____ drive if you want to work in the USA.
- I wish I _____ learn languages when I was younger.
- My granddad really enjoys _____ go for a walk whenever he wants.

- A That's precisely why I wouldn't like to be one.
- B I would have liked to have gone abroad.
- C The ones we contacted were all full.
- D Distances between places are very far and there is very little public transport.
- E That's why he prefers to live on the ground floor.
- F My parents are going out and I have to look after my little brother.

7 Complete the descriptions with your own ideas.



If you want to be an artist, you must be able to _____.

_____ but you don't necessarily need to be able to _____.

_____ if you _____.

_____ you _____.

_____ he goes to _____.

_____ but on the other hand you won't be able to _____.

_____ Most _____.

_____ successful artists enjoy being able to _____.



If you want to be a professional sportsman, you must be able to _____.

_____ if you _____.

_____ you _____.

_____ only the best sportsmen _____.

_____ Many of these _____.

_____ were once famous but have never _____.

_____ 30% of _____.

_____.

LISTENING

- 1 You are going to listen to an interview with a business consultant who talks about employees wasting time on the Internet. Before you listen, match the words from the recording to the definitions.

- 1 loaf
- 2 neglected to
- 3 waste time
- 4 undervalued
- 5 get out of hand
- 6 sack
- 7 be in the sack
- 8 turn

- A become impossible to control
- B not appreciated sufficiently
- C lose your job, be dismissed
- D be lazy or unoccupied
- E document in which you declare your income
- F dismiss
- G prohibit
- H give all your attention to

- 2  Look at the picture and try to predict some of the different ways in which people at work waste time. Listen and check your ideas.



- 3  Listen again. Complete the summary of the recording with the word(s) that you hear.

- 1 Companies are worried about a new trend, called _____
- 2 It means that employees are _____ while at work
- 3 They can waste up to _____ of their time doing this
- 4 It seems that social media like Facebook and Twitter are particularly _____
- 5 Sport is another big _____
- 6 The problem's particularly bad among _____
- 7 All employees surf the net
- 8 To put an end to the problem, companies can ban _____ certain websites
- 9 In the worst cases, companies can _____ a worker

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

- 4 Answer the questions.

- 1 How much money are employers losing?
- 2 How often do employees get inspired by tweets or messages?
- 3 Which sports are particularly distracting?
- 4 When do employees spend most time shopping?
- 5 How do older employees spend their time on the Internet?
- 6 Name some reasons why employees cyber loaf.
- 7 How can cyberloafing be good for productivity?

- 5 Write these sentences in your language.

- 1 Employees across the board surf the internet looking for jobs
- 2 But what if a company feels the situation has got out of hand?
- 3 You'd better watch out

READING

- 1 Read the first paragraph of the text and complete the definition.

appreneur: a business person who

Appreneurs

The newly coined term *appreneur* is all the rage in the business world today. It's a combination of the words *entrepreneur* and *application software*. Entrepreneurs are innovators who set up their own business, usually in the area of new technologies, such as applications – or apps – for mobile devices, like smartphones or tablets. Following the recent take-off of smartphones, a wide range of apps has been developed, and new ones are being launched almost every day. 1 _____.

The most famous one is WhatsApp, the instant text messaging application. Since its launch in 2009, WhatsApp has attracted over 250 million users, the vast majority under 25, and it now handles an astonishing 10 billion messages a day. People worldwide have

become addicted to Rovio's Angry Birds, which is played for an incredible 200 million minutes per day! And there are countless others.

There are apps that provide information about activities happening in people's local areas, like concerts or sports events, enabling them to meet up with like-minded people.

Many of the people behind these apps are young, in their early twenties or even in their teens. So, how do they do it? How does one become an appreneur? First of all, a prospective appreneur needs to come up with an innovative idea for an app that fills a hole in the market.

At this stage, they will have to do some serious social networking, spreading the word on Facebook, Twitter and so on.

An important decision appreneurs have to take is whether to charge for the app, or offer it for free and make money by attracting advertising. Most successful appreneurs opt for the latter because they can draw millions of users by offering their product for free, or at a minimal cost, but far fewer if users have to pay.

2 _____, But it seems to work, which is the main thing.

One advantage for budding appreneurs is that they need very little investment to start up their company.

3 _____ On average, this development phase lasts 2-6 months. With a little luck, once an app is launched, results may be seen very quickly, with the number of users multiplying within days.

In short, appreneurship is a career opportunity for enterprising and imaginative people who lack the capital to set up a traditional company. 4 _____.



GLOSSARY

coin	think up, invent
rage	fashion or trend
like-minded	with similar tastes or interests
opt for	choose
budding	beginning, developing

VOCABULARY

Nouns ending in -y and their adjectives

2 Read the text again and complete gaps 1-6 with the correct sentences from A-G. There is one extra sentence you do not need to use.

- A They may need to let a ~~the~~ ~~potential~~ ~~users~~ know about their app's existence.
 B ~~the~~ ~~business~~ ~~may well~~ ~~democratize~~ ~~the~~ ~~business world~~.
 C ~~its~~ ~~novel~~ ~~strategy~~ ~~goes~~ ~~entirely~~ ~~against~~ ~~traditional~~ ~~business wisdom~~ ~~which~~ ~~teaches~~ ~~that~~ ~~the~~ ~~most~~ ~~profitable~~ ~~product~~ ~~is~~ ~~the~~ ~~one~~ ~~that~~ ~~can~~ ~~be~~ ~~sold~~ ~~with~~ ~~the~~ ~~highest~~ ~~margin~~.
 D ~~appreneurs~~ ~~are~~ ~~able~~ ~~to~~ ~~do~~ ~~their~~ ~~own~~ ~~coding~~, ~~they~~ ~~will~~ ~~have~~ ~~hardly~~ ~~any~~ ~~costs~~ ~~except~~ ~~what~~ ~~they~~ ~~need~~ ~~to~~ ~~get~~ ~~by~~ ~~while~~ ~~developing~~ ~~the~~ ~~product~~.
 E ~~Some~~ ~~appreneurs~~ ~~have~~ ~~made~~ ~~lots~~ ~~of~~ ~~money~~ ~~from~~ ~~their~~ ~~inventions~~.
 F ~~There~~ ~~are~~ ~~apps~~ ~~for~~ ~~bird~~ ~~watchers~~ ~~that~~ ~~reproduce~~ ~~the~~ ~~animals'~~ ~~sounds~~, ~~luring~~ ~~them~~ ~~away~~ ~~from~~ ~~their~~ ~~nests~~ ~~and~~ ~~making~~ ~~it~~ ~~easier~~ ~~for~~ ~~people~~ ~~to~~ ~~spot~~ ~~them~~.
 G ~~Several~~ ~~apps~~ ~~to~~ ~~match~~ ~~a~~ ~~tastes~~.

3 Choose the correct answers.

- What do we learn about apps in paragraph 1?
 A They have not produced other ~~less~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~smartphone~~.
 B They have really taken off in business.
 C They are ~~in~~ ~~a~~ ~~developmental~~ ~~stage~~.

2 What do we learn about WhatsApp in paragraph 2?

- A It is a quarter of a million users.
 B Many people have become addicted to it.
 C It is most popular among young people.

3 What is the most important thing appreneurs tend to do?

- A They need to build up a large social network.
 B They need to obtain finance.
 C They have to invent something that satisfies a need.

4 How are appreneurs different from conventional businesspeople?

- A They prefer to charge very little and have many ~~income~~ ~~sources~~.
 B They don't want to make money.
 C They don't use advertising.

5 A second difference between appreneurs and other businesspeople is that

- A the second make a lot more money.
 B the first can develop their business with little money and time.
 C the first are more enterprising.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct adjective or noun of the words in the box. There are two extra words you do not need to use.

innovatively history x-ray mysteriously impressively
 technology suddenly chemistry

- 1 We spent our honeymoon in a ~~resort~~ resort.
 2 Online shopping has become more and more ~~technology~~ technology.

3 I ~~used~~ ~~to~~ ~~really~~ ~~enjoy~~ ~~my~~ ~~classes~~ because ~~keeping~~ ~~track~~ ~~about~~ ~~the~~ ~~past~~.

4 ~~If~~ ~~you~~ ~~don't~~ ~~use~~ ~~passwords~~, ~~you~~ ~~can~~ ~~lose~~ ~~data~~ ~~which~~ ~~will~~ ~~be~~ ~~irreversible~~.

5 No ~~allergies~~ ~~has~~ ~~been~~ ~~found~~ ~~for~~ ~~some~~ ~~of~~ ~~these~~ allergies people are suffering from.

6 There have been so many advances in ~~that~~ ~~it's~~ ~~hard~~ ~~to~~ ~~keep~~ ~~up~~ that it's hard to keep up.

7 The current ~~in~~ ~~the~~ ~~political~~ ~~party~~ ~~is~~ ~~one~~ ~~of~~ ~~increasing~~ ~~radicalization~~.

8 ~~There~~ ~~have~~ ~~been~~ ~~so~~ ~~many~~ ~~advances~~ ~~in~~ ~~technology~~ ~~that~~ ~~it's~~ ~~hard~~ ~~to~~ ~~keep~~ ~~up~~.

9 Cleopatra was a ~~character~~ ~~about~~ ~~whom~~ ~~most~~ ~~are~~ ~~known~~.

10 During the ~~revolution~~, manufacturing expanded rapidly.

5 Look back at Verb Zone in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 5.

6 Rewrite the sentences, using one of the multi-part verbs from exercise 5.

1 Bill Gates was only 20 years old when he created Microsoft.

2 He managed to gain access to the company database ~~ing~~ ~~and~~ ~~then~~ ~~he~~ ~~made~~ ~~he~~ ~~an~~ ~~application~~ ~~to~~ ~~the~~ ~~media~~.

3 Many people are deceived by online scams and ~~some~~ ~~use~~ ~~a~~ ~~small~~ ~~amount~~ ~~of~~ ~~money~~.

4 You need a password in order ~~to~~ ~~enter~~ ~~the~~ ~~website~~.

5 ~~When~~ ~~he~~ ~~was~~ ~~able~~ ~~to~~ ~~go~~ ~~on~~ ~~holiday~~ ~~and~~ ~~he~~ ~~returned~~ ~~and~~ ~~the~~ ~~money~~ ~~borrowed~~ ~~from~~ ~~the~~ ~~bank~~.

1 Match the sentences.

- 1 I can't find my mobile
- 2 Your father **could** have fixed that computer for you
- 3 Pedro **didn't** answer my call.
- 4 He **can't** have left the office yet.
- 5 **If** you hurry up, you may still catch him
- 6 The burglar left without taking anything

- A Someone **must** have stolen it
- B He **may** have been asleep
- C He **must** have been disturbed
- D He **might** not have left home yet
- E You **just** had to ask him
- F His car is still parked outside

2 For each of the sentences in exercise 1, say what the verbs in bold mean. Choose from A-D below.

- A I'm certain it happened 1
- B I'm certain it didn't happen 2
- C It's possible it happened / didn't happen 3
- D It was possible but didn't happen 4

3 Complete the dialogues using modal perfects and the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. There may be more than one possible answer

- 1 A: Don hasn't been coming to Japanese class. He _____ (give up)
B: No way. He _____ (do) that. He's really keen on anything Japanese. He _____ (go) on holiday, or something like that
- 2 A: I can't see Stacy and May anywhere. They _____ (leave)
B: They _____ (step out) for some fresh air. It's hot in here
- 3 A: We have released the suspect because he _____ (commit) the crime. He was out of the country at the time.
B: But _____ he _____ (instruct) someone else to do it?
- 4 A: Susie is looking really smart these days. She _____ (find) a new job.
B: There's a rumour that she _____ (win) some money in the lottery
- 5 A: I wonder why Pat didn't come to the meeting. She _____ (forget).
B: I can't believe that - she's very reliable. She _____ (know) about it.

4 Complete the sentences with *should* / *shouldn't* have and a suitable verb in the past participle. There may be more than one possible answer.

- 1 Alice got terribly sunburnt. She _____ on the beach for so long.
- 2 Someone hacked into Petra's computer. She _____ an unknown site.
- 3 Burglars broke into my neighbour's house. She _____ the windows.
- 4 When we arrived, the restaurant was full. We _____ a table.
- 5 When Julia got home, she discovered that the dress didn't fit. She _____ it.
- 6 You _____ me if you needed help.
- 7 _____ Yuto that job, or not?
- 8 Our car got hit by lightning. We _____ it under a tree.
- 9 Leo is a university student. His parents have come to visit him, but he is not ready and everything is still in a mess. Write sentences about what Leo **should** have done, using the verbs in the box.



comb empty get hang up
make shave take down wash

- 1 _____
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____
- 6 _____
- 7 _____
- 8 _____

EXTRA CHALLENGE

Read the examples of nuisance behaviour.

Parents who bring young children to a library and let them run wild.

Neighbours who play loud music at night.

• Dog owners who don't clean up after their pets

Put the three texts of people complaining in order and match them to the nuisances. The first lines have been done for you.

Have you got any idea just how loud that is?

Why does the dog go into a library instead of spoiling other people's fun?

My son is studying for an exam.

Could you turn down the volume?

Look, it's only 10 o'clock, so I can't see what you're complaining about.

3 Excuse me. Are you going to pick that up?

Yes, I am. Look what your dog's done over there. You do realise this is a public space.

Don't see what the fuss is about. It's practically underneath that bush.

Are you taking notes?

Write one more line for each dialogue and try to persuade the person to change their behaviour.

1 I'm sorry that your children are being very loud.

Well, could you please ask them to turn it down? I don't like it like that?

2 They're just kids. Kids are loud. What do you expect?

Oh, they're just burning off a bit of energy. No harm in that.

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

1 What are you called if you a) like using new technology and b) dislike or avoid using it?

2 Find an example of a telephone scam in the news.

3 What are mobile phones called in a) Sweden, b) Germany and c) Japan?

4 How did a mobile phone make B. B. King famous?

5 Is there more than one abbreviation?

6 Find three charities you can donate to what would be donations of old mobile phones.

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. What has happened to Gary and why does he not understand Greg?



INTERACTION

Making a complaint

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say

- 1 when you are dissatisfied with a service?
- 2 when you want to make it clear that something is unacceptable?
- 3 when you promise someone that you are going to take action?

- 2 Complete the exchanges between a customer and various employees of a phone company, using the words and expressions in the box. Listen and check.

get back to you as soon as possible

If that's the case, understand your reaction if you just leave it in the strongest possible terms disgrace report the problem happy about this good enough seems to be On behalf of

Customer Good morning. Top Phones International. How can I help you?

Caller: My name's Tony West. I'm calling about my internet connection.

Customer: What's the problem, Mr West?

Caller: It's been running really slowly the last couple of days and yesterday it completely packed up.

Customer: Did you report the problem to the technical department?

Caller: Yes, phoned them at midday and they said they'd get me in half an hour. Well, I'm still waiting and I'm not happy.

Customer: I completely understand your reaction. Let me put you through to them again, so they can sort it out.

Technical services: Technical Services, hello?

Caller: Yes, hello. Tony West here. My internet has been down since yesterday and your department still hasn't done anything about it.

Technical services: I can only apologize. We'll send someone round to fix it straight away.

Caller: When can I expect them?

Technical services: They'll be there between 10 and 12.

Technical services: Technical Services, hello?

Caller: Tony West again here. Now look, it's now 2 o'clock and your technician still hasn't arrived. This is an outrage.

Technical services: _____ Top Phones International, let me repeat how sorry we are. Perhaps you'd like to arrange another visit, Mr West?

Caller: I already had an appointment. Your company is an absolute disgrace. I demand that you put me through to your manager.

Manager: Hello?

Caller: I'd like to complain _____ about the service I've received, or rather not received, from your company. I've been without an internet connection for over 24 hours and I've spent all morning waiting for a technician who never came.

Manager: I'm terribly sorry to hear that. But I'll get back to you as soon as possible.

Caller: No thank you. (This isn't _____ As of now I'm switching providers!)

- 3 Find words or expressions in the exchanges that mean:

- 1 organize or plan _____
- 2 repair _____
- 3 stop working (a machine) _____
- 4 solve _____

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

back on through up with

- 1 Bea isn't here. Can you call _____ later?
- 2 Prices of plane tickets just keep going _____. They're astronomical.
- 3 Please bear _____ me for a moment. I'll just go and get the file.
- 4 A: Can you give me a hand with this? B: Hold _____. I'll be with you in a second.
- 5 No, I don't want you to put me _____. Again, I want to speak to the manager?

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 5 Revise the Express yourself box on page 68 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

WRITING

An article for an online magazine

Introducing contrasting and opposing ideas

- 1 Rewrite and/or link the sentences, using the word(s) in brackets. Make any necessary changes.
 - 1 Even though mobile phones can be useful, they can also disturb people (in spite of)
 - 2 My friends all claim they aren't addicted. However, most of them check their phones all the time (even though)
 - 3 I recognize that texting is much cheaper, but it is also more impersonal than calling (a though)
 - 4 I love reading. Most of my friends think it's boring (whereas)
 - 5 Although the crew was strong wind the sailing boat left the harbour (despite)
 - 6 My brother's friends were nervous about the test, but I set off alone (nevertheless)
 - 7 The sector of renewable energy is still expanding, whereas construction has declined (on the other hand)

- 2 Complete the article with contrasting words or expressions from exercise 1.

Social networks are just not my thing!

1. *What is the purpose of the study?*
 2. *What are the research objectives?*
 3. *What is the research methodology?*
 4. *What are the results of the study?*
 5. *What are the conclusions of the study?*
 6. *What are the limitations of the study?*
 7. *What are the implications of the study?*
 8. *What are the future research directions?*
 9. *What are the references of the study?*
 10. *What are the appendices of the study?*



1. multiple choice have indicated that Ford did what the country and the state
 present in saying that he "really" never was
 "understand" that way that he "discovered" the way
 "the" and "the" way that he "discovered" the way

Moreover, in a world where people who claim to have STDs post a Facebook status and then delete it, and where, with the advent of the internet,

They are in comp with acc to use π numerals. I will a

410: Subjects are π integral. Why would I want to know the integral but not the grouping?

the tests is that it is not the world having being due to appear in principle. There is some
 2. It is not explain they imagine that the world is one about persons & objects.

ask them: What's wrong with emailing or calling me
of the advantages of social networks
remain unconvicted. I'm inclined to use Facebook or some
my friends must be able to persuade me to use LinkedIn.
I don't start as skeptic as I am now.

- 3 Find and correct the five mistakes in the use of *can* / *be able to*.

Pa. agra 3

Paragraph 3

Paragraph 4

Paragraph 4

Paragraph 5

- 4 Read the Writing Reference on page 118. Write an article called *Why social networks are important to young people today*. Follow the instructions.

- 1 Use the article on this page as a model
- 2 Divide your work into clear paragraphs, using this plan:
Paragraph 1 – introduce your topic
Paragraphs 2 / 3 – give several advantages of using social networks
Paragraph 4 – mention one or two possible disadvantages
Paragraph 5 – conclusion: sum up and explain why you think social networks are important

Reminder

- Use expressions which introduce contrasting and linking ideas

VOCABULARY

1 Circle the word that is the odd one out.

- 1 detect, identify, survey, recognize
- 2 plummet, soar, nose-dive, crash
- 3 bunch, jar, packet, carton
- 4 hardly, lonely, actually, kindly
- 5 spam, ring tone, password, virus

2 Complete the sentences with the correct word (A, B or C).

- 1 The farmer's fields were trampled by a _____ of cows.
- 2 Most official buildings use CCTV cameras to _____ images of all visitors.
- 3 The views from the helicopter were _____.
- 4 His family urged him to see a doctor and in the end he _____ agreed.
- 5 I haven't _____ my friend, all for ages. I'm beginning to get worried, so I'll send her an email.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 A flock | B herd | C swarm |
| 2 A capture | B display | C spy on |
| 3 A breathless | B breathable | C breath-taking |
| 4 A reluctantly | B unfortunately | C randomly |
| 5 A heard of | B heard about | C heard from |

3 Complete the sentences with the noun form of the words in the box.

perform reconstruct recover replace

- 1 I'm afraid this TV can't be repaired; you'd better look for a _____.
- 2 Critics praised the actor's _____ as one of the best of his career.
- 3 After the floods, the government invested a lot of money in the _____ of the area.
- 4 My grandmother's _____ after the operation was slow.

4 Complete the sentences with the adjective form of the words in the box.

industry popularity psychology security

- 1 Many victims of crime suffer from _____ problems long after the event.
- 2 Many rivers have been contaminated by _____ waste.
- 3 Many people feel more _____ when there are CCTV cameras around.
- 4 This quiz has been one of the most _____ TV programmes for over ten years.

GRAMMAR

5 Complete the sentences with the conjunctions in the box.

as soon as before unless until when

- 1 Our plane leaves at 8 o'clock, so _____ we leave early, we won't get to the airport on time.
- 2 We _____ have to stay here _____ the rain stops, otherwise we'll get soaked!
- 3 Charles will meet us at the airport, so _____ we arrive, we should give him a ring.
- 4 We don't need to change any money _____ we leave _____ we can do it _____ we get there.

6 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- 1 The weather is very bad, so we can't go to the beach. If the weather wasn't _____.
- 2 They lost the battle and their country was invaded. If they hadn't _____.
- 3 I'm not strong enough to be a professional football player. I wish I _____.
- 4 If she hadn't posted that photo on social media, the school would never have found out what she'd done. Had _____.

7 Complete the sentences with a form of be able to.

- 1 They _____ (not) find a new house yet.
- 2 You must _____ speak several languages fluently if you want to be an interpreter.
- 3 I would like _____ dance better.
- 4 I like _____ get up late at weekends.

8 Complete the sentences with a modal perfect of the verb in brackets.

- 1 It _____ (be) Esther who sent you that SMS. She lost her phone two days ago.
- 2 You _____ (eat) so many sweets earlier. It's very bad for your teeth.
- 3 A: I can't see Sally's car, isn't she coming to the party?
B: She said she was, but she _____ decide to take the bus.
- 4 Why didn't you tell us your car was in the garage? We _____ (give) you a lift?

9 Write sentences with the future continuous or the future perfect of the verbs in the box.

buy go see talk work

REVIEW CHECK

0 Complete the text with the correct words (A, B, C or D)

Are you a nomophobe?

1 My phone never _____? Do you spend more
than three hours a day on it, check it every ten minutes, even
when you're asleep?

2 If I were asked 'yes' to all these questions, you'd _____
suffering from **nomophobia**, an abbreviation for **no-mobile phone**
phobia or the fear of being out of mobile phone contact

3 A recent _____ survey in the UK nearly two
thirds (65%) of mobile phone users admitted they felt anxious
when they lost their phone, ran out of battery or credit, or had
no network. _____ This figure was significantly
higher than a previous study, showing that addiction rates had

4 _____, young people were the most addicted: a
77% of 18 to 24 year-olds confessed they
couldn't live without their phones. They claimed
that their phones helped them _____ with their friends and
didn't make them feel less lonely.

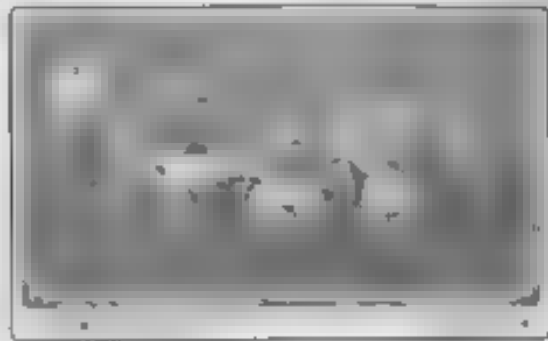
5 Although **nomophobia** isn't a
_____ condition,
it can cause problems. So, next
time you reach for your phone,
ask yourself if you really need it



- 1 A turned on B put off C switched on D switched off
- 2 A could be B wouldn't be C could be able D will be
- 3 A virtual B online C live D connected
- 4 A line B contact C exposure D coverage
- 5 A dropped B plunged C shot up D declined
- 6 A hardly B typically C fortunately D absolutely
- 7 A eye-catching B nerve-shattering C mind-blowing D nice-sounding
- 8 A wouldn't be able B mustn't C would be able D can't
- 9 A look after B fit in C stand out D take after
- 10 A life-threatening B long-lasting C life-saving D time-consuming

Video

Rugby



BEFORE YOU WATCH

1 Read the introduction and the questions in NOW WATCH



Rugby Union, often referred to as simply 'rugby', is a full contact sport that started in England and is now played in over 100 countries.

NOW WATCH

2 Answer the questions.

- 1 Who was William Webb Ellis?
- 2 Why, according to the video, were the rules of rugby first written down?
- 3 What differences are mentioned between rugby league and rugby union?
- 4 What is said about rugby in Wales and New Zealand?
- 5 What justification is given for rugby being considered a gentleman's game?

3 Match words and phrases 1-5 from the video with definitions A-E

- | | |
|-------------------|--|
| 1 prestigious | A the song chosen to represent a country |
| 2 outlet | B with a good reputation |
| 3 amateur | C to try to stop a player who has the ball |
| 4 national anthem | D a way of releasing energy |
| 5 tackle | E not professional |

FOLLOW UP

4 Go online and find out about rugby. Write an interesting fact to share with your class.

Did you know that ...?

READING

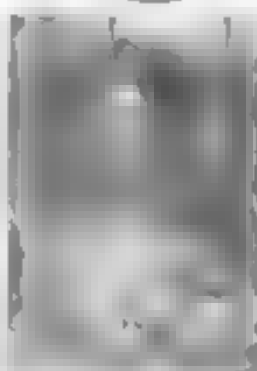
- 1 Look at the pictures and scan the first three lines of the text. Which animals does the charity work with and how do they help them?

To the rescue

Not only adults, but also the young are in danger. Many captive animals are in need of our attention as well. International animal welfare charity Four Paws rescues bears and big cats that are being kept in sub-standard zoos, used in circuses or the entertainment industry. In one of their most recent feats, in the spring of 2012 they removed a lion family, 2 adults and 2 cubs, from a zoo in Romania. The animals had been cooped up in cramped, concrete cages for years and were suffering from severe malnutrition. In a complex operation they were introduced into crates and transported, by truck and plane, to South Africa, where they were released into Lions Rock – a big cat sanctuary run by the charity. Animal lovers around the world watched video footage of the cubs waddling out of their crate on stumpy, deformed legs – due to vitamin and mineral deficiencies – and rejoiced over their reunion with their parents. Members of the organization are confident the lions will adapt well to their new environment and that the cubs, with due care, will be able to recover from their ordeal.

A large part of Four Paws' work focuses on Eastern Europe where awareness of animal rights is still relatively low and European Animal Welfare Standards are not always adhered to. It is estimated that there are 42 zoos in Romania alone, built during Ceausescu's Communist regime, as symbols of the country's prosperity. After 2007 – when Romania joined the EU, half of these were closed to the public for failing to meet European standards. Unfortunately, their closure didn't improve the animals' lives – it just meant their plight went unnoticed. Four Paws aims to put an end to this situation, not only by physically saving as many animals as possible, but also by obliging the zoos to sign legal agreements promising not to keep large predators in captivity again.

Although their campaigns on behalf of big cats and bears have attracted most media attention, the charity's work doesn't stop there. They have been looking after stray animals all over the world for 15 years, while their specialist teams have been involved in animal relief operations in areas of extreme drought or flooding.



- 2 Read the text again and circle T (true) or F (false). Rewrite the false sentences below to make them true.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1 Four Paws wants to save all big cats from captivity. | T / F |
| 2 Recently, four lions were released into the wild in South Africa. | T / F |
| 3 Many people watched the operation in the cinema. | T / F |
| 4 The cubs couldn't walk very well because of malnutrition. | T / F |
| 5 Animal protection is now a priority in Eastern Europe. | T / F |
| 6 Romania's previous government created zoos as status symbols. | T / F |
| 7 In 2007, all Romanian zoos were closed due to lack of public funds. | T / F |
| 8 After the zoos were closed, the animals' living conditions remained equally poor. | T / F |
| 9 Four Paws intends to improve the situation by saving as many animals as possible. | T / F |
| 10 The charity also works with homeless animals and animals affected by natural disasters. | T / F |

- 3 Find these numbers in the text and say what they refer to.

2012

2007

2

42

42

Verbs with re-

- 4 Look at paragraph 1 of the text and find:

1 four verbs with the prefix re-

2 one noun with the prefix re-

What is the verb for this noun?

- 5 Answer the question with your own opinion.

Do you enjoy visiting zoos? Why / Why not?

VOCABULARY

Conservation

- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct adjective forms of the words in the box.

danger death develop farm
nature poison protect tourist

- 1 Pandas are only found in some _____ regions of south-western China.
- 2 Farmers should wear sturdy boots because there are many _____ snakes in the area.
- 3 Some _____ practices, such as the use of pesticides, are harmful to the environment.
- 4 Several sheep were found _____ after the wolf attacked.
- 5 There has been a massive increase in construction in _____ areas along the coast.
- 6 _____ countries usually have less money for environmental protection than prosperous Western ones.
- 7 Elephants are particularly _____ when they are protecting their cubs.
- 8 As wild fish stocks are dwindling rapidly, there is an increasing demand for _____ fish.
- 9 Nowadays, many people prefer to use cosmetics made of _____ ingredients.
- 10 While handling the reptiles, zookeepers have to use _____ clothing.

- 7 Complete the text with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

Nowadays there are many _____ threats to wildlife. _____ as long as we do the work, we are fighting for the _____ of the environment and the _____ protection of animals.

One of the main dangers are the massive _____ of habitats and aggressive _____ animals. _____ practices are also _____ existing projects. _____ the most _____ and _____ endangered species for their _____ (value) fur and _____ (responsible) tourists still buy animal souvenirs. _____ tourists fear that without sound _____ (environment) policies and strict laws banning the _____ (legal) trade in animals and animal products, many species will soon become _____ extinction.

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Words connected to animals

- 8 Label the parts of the animals with the words in the box.

beak claw feathers hoof/hooves mane
paw tail trunk tusks whiskers wing



- 9 Complete the animal descriptions with one of the words in the box.

bark bite furry hairy ivory nest purr
scratch spots sting stripes web

- 1 When dogs get excited or angry, they _____.
- 2 When cats are angry, they can _____ you with their claws, but when you stroke them, they _____.
- 3 A spider weaves a _____ between the trees and catches insects in it.
- 4 Many elephants are killed for the _____ of their tusks.
- 5 Children like rabbits because they are soft and _____.
- 6 Tarantulas are large and _____ spiders that live in tropical areas.
- 7 Bees and wasps are insects that can _____ you.
- 8 A mosquito _____ can transmit malaria.
- 9 Birds lay their eggs in a _____.
- 10 A leopard's skin has _____ and a tiger's has _____.

- 10 Match the names for the young animals in the box to the adults.

cat chick cub foal kid kitten lamb puppy

- 1 horse _____ 5 wolf _____
- 2 goat _____ 6 cow _____
- 3 dog _____ 7 sheep _____
- 4 cat _____ 8 chicken _____

- 1 Complete the table with the correct forms of the verbs in the active or passive.

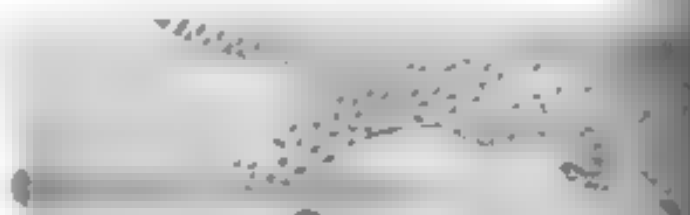
Tense	Active	Passive
Present simple passive (+)	1A They grow oranges in Spain.	1B Oranges _____ in Spain.
Present simple passive (?)	2A Do they grow rice in Spain?	2B _____ rice in Brazil?
Present continuous passive	3A NGOs are holding a conference.	3B A conference _____.
Past simple passive	4A Thieves _____ three paintings.	4B Three paintings were stolen.
Past continuous passive	5A Governments _____ measures.	5B Measures were being taken.
Present perfect simple passive	6A The police have arrested the poachers.	6B The poachers _____.
Past perfect simple passive	7A Hunters _____ the tigers.	7B The tigers had been shot by hunters.
Future simple passive	8A The authorities will ban whaling.	8B Whaling _____.
Modal passive	9A We _____ the killing of animals.	9B The killing of animals can be prevented.

- 2 Look at the table above and answer the questions.

- In 1B, do we know who grows the oranges? **Y/N**
Is it important? **Y/N**
- In 5B, if we want to explain who arrested the poachers, which preposition do we need?
- Which verb tenses do not appear in the table?

Can these tenses be used in the passive? **Y/N**

- 3 Circle the correct options and decide if the quiz statements are True (T) or False (F). Then check your answers at the bottom of the page.



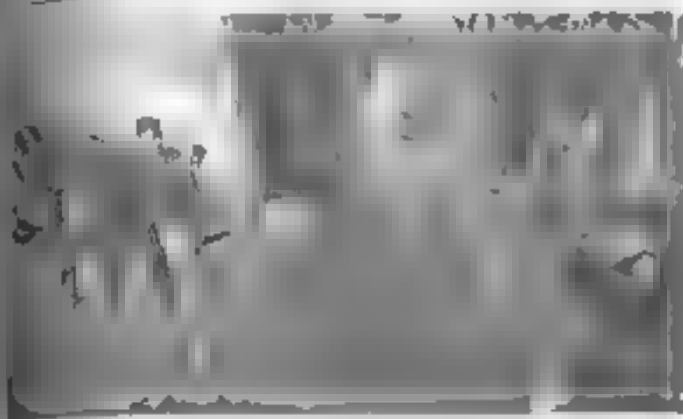
Fun facts about animals

- Goldfish that keep / are kept in dark places gradually become more nervous. **T/F**
- More people own / are owned Labradors than any other breed of dog. **T/F**
- You shouldn't wear blue in the jungle, because mosquitoes will attract / will be attracted to it twice as much as to any other colour. **T/F**
- Blue whales can make / can be made more noise than any other animal. **T/F**
- A group of tigers knows / is known as an 'ambush' or 'streak'. **T/F**
- Impalas have seen / have been seen jumping ten metres in the air. **T/F**
- A lion can kill / can be killed by an ostrich's kick. **T/F**
- Top speeds of around 113 km per hour have reached / have been reached by cheetahs. **T/F**
- In the past, Yorkshire farmers were putting / were put to work in 'falcones' killing rats. **T/F**
- Male giraffes fight over / are fought over females, hitting each other with the neck. This calls / is called 'necking'. **T/F**

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

- Lots of trees _____ (cut down) by logging companies every day.
- The number of bees in the UK _____ (decrease) steadily.
- Fertilizers and pesticides _____ (harm) more and more species every day.
- Tuna fish _____ (must protect) from overfishing.
- Pandas _____ (become) extremely rare before the government took measures to protect them.
- Although tigers (declare) a protected species many years ago, their numbers _____ (not go up yet).

LISTENING



- 1 You are going to listen to four people talking about their jobs, which involve working with animals. Before you listen, match these words from the recording to the definitions.

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| 1 shelter | A go crazy, out of fear or excitement |
| 2 dosage | B TV or film recording session |
| 3 handle | C act in accordance with |
| 4 hoot | D abandoned, homeless animal |
| 5 comply with | E deal with, manage, control |
| 6 | F boring |
| 7 freak out | G give a safe place to live |
| 8 stray | H prescribed amount (of a drug or medication) |

- 2 Listen and match the four speakers to areas A–D they work in.

- | | |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| Speaker 1 | A Film |
| Speaker 2 | B Government |
| Speaker 3 | C Conservation centre |
| Speaker 4 | D Advertising |

- 3 Listen again and choose the correct answers.

- Speaker 1 teaches
- both experts and members of the general public.
 - only people who work in zoos.
 - interested people who come to listen to lectures.
- 2 The students of speaker 1 may have to
- operate on a wild animal.
 - capture a wild animal.
 - observe a wild animal.
- 3 The job of speaker 2 consists mainly of
- looking after and training animals.
 - cleaning animals.
 - travelling with animals.
- 4 The job of speaker 2 is
- glamorous but dirty.
 - glamorous but dangerous.
 - dirty and irregular.

- 5 Speaker 3 works with
- insects and reptiles.
 - pets, farm animals and some exotic animals.
 - farm animals and large exotic animals.

- 6 Speaker 3 thinks her work is

- dirty but well-paid.
- hard and boring.
- badly paid but fun.

- 7 Speaker 4 regrets that his job

- is unhealthy.
- involves a lot of administrative work.
- isn't popular with businesses.

- 8 Speaker 4 says that his colleagues

- have a variety of qualifications.
- are mostly lawyers.
- all have university degrees.

TEST YOUR MEMORY

- 4 Answer the questions.

- Which animals does speaker 1 work with?
- Name two animal specialists who may attend the courses of speaker 1.
- Which animals does speaker 2 work with?
- Name two things speaker 2 may have to prepare them for.
- Name three animals mentioned by speaker 3.
- Why did the models on the photo shoot 'freak out'?
- Which places does speaker 4 inspect and why?
- Which two degrees does speaker 4 mention?

- 5 Write these sentences in your language.

- People assume my work is glamorous, but it's far from it.
- Some of the poor things really freaked out.
- There's a lot of paperwork involved, and many hours spent behind a computer.

READING

- 1 Look at the photos and the headings in the article.
Predict how these dogs help people.

Man's best friend

Dogs have been assisting humans for centuries. Read on and find out how.

A Guide dogs

Guide dogs assist blind and visually impaired people in their daily lives. Blind people were using dogs as early as the mid-16th century, though the first training schools for guide dogs were set up in Germany after World War I to help blind war veterans.

Golden Retrievers and Labradors are the most appropriate breeds, due to their intelligence. Other factors taken into account when choosing a guide dog are the respective heights of person and dog, and allergies of the prospective owner.

Guide dogs are essential to their owners' independence as they guide them around obstacles and enable them to move around safely. They stop at kerbs and steps and help their owners cross busy roads, though it's up to the latter to decide when to cross.

B Sledge dogs

These dogs were bred for pulling a sledge and used in cold areas such as Canada, Lapland, Siberia, Finland or Alaska where snow made transportation virtually impossible.

In the late 1800s, during the Gold Rush, dog sledges were used to take supplies to diggers' camps in Alaska. Alaskan Huskies and Malamutes were the favourite breeds for hauling heavy loads, due to their strength and resilience. Another famous use of dog sledges during that time was in the exploration of the North and South Poles. Nowadays, competitive dog-sledge racing, known as 'mushing', is a sport practised mainly in North America, northern Europe and the Alps.



C Herding dogs

Herding dogs are used to manage sheep. With proper training, they are able to move a flock of sheep and control them with their authoritative presence. On the other hand, poorly trained animals will only make sheep nervous. Herding dogs should not be confused with guardian dogs, which protect the sheep from predators.

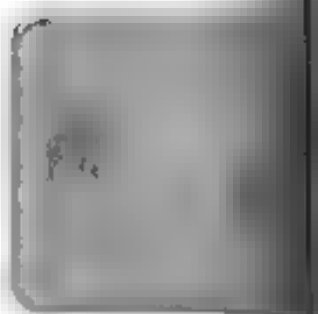
One of the most popular breeds is the Border Collie, which originates from the English-Scottish border area. These are lively, obedient and highly intelligent animals, which is why they are also popular as narcotics and bomb detection dogs.

Because of their boundless energy, these clever dogs do not make particularly good pets, unless their owners can spend lots of time with them and keep them busy.

D Sniffer dogs

Sniffer dogs are used in many situations, but are essential in search and rescue operations, such as after an earthquake. They have been trained to recognize the smell of living people (rather than dead ones), and can search large areas much more quickly and efficiently than humans or robots.

Selection is tough, because many of the things these dogs are asked to do, such as climbing up ladders, are unnatural for them. Only one in a hundred dogs tested will have the makings of a professional sniffer, with Retrievers, Border Collies and German Shepherds topping the list. The dogs are rewarded with a toy whenever they locate a victim. If they can't find anyone, handlers may have to pretend to be victims to keep up the dogs' morale.



GLOSSARY

kerb	edge of the pavement where the road begins
sledge	vehicle for travelling over snow and ice
dig	make holes in the ground or move soil
boundless	unlimited
have the makings of	have the necessary abilities or qualities to become something

VOCABULARY

Identical verbs & nouns

2 Read the text quickly and check your ideas from exercise 1.

3 Match the questions to parts A-D of the text.

Why a dog

- 1 has helped make important discoveries?
- 2 is faster than a machine?
- 3 is an unsuitable pet?
- 4 lives in a harsh climate?
- 5 can get depressed if unsuccessful?
- 6 needs to be matched to his owner?
- 7 has helped soldiers?
- 8 has seen its role change from work to recreation?
- 9 needs to be told by its owner when to do certain things?
- 10 has a role that is sometimes misunderstood?

4 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 Who or what does the word *fetter* in part A refer to?
 - A their owners
 - B they
 - C busy dogs
- 2 It is said that Labradors make good guide dogs because of
 - A their intelligence and obedience
 - B their size, type of coat and cleverness
 - C their character and cleverness
- 3 The article states that, without sledge dogs
 - A People would never have found gold in Alaska
 - B Diggers wouldn't have been able to receive provisions in winter
 - C Diggers wouldn't have been able to sell their gold
- 4 What is not said about herding dogs?
 - A They are able to manipulate and keep a flock of sheep under control
 - B They can have both a positive and a negative effect on the sheep
 - C They keep the sheep safe from wild animals
 - D According to the article, not all dogs can be sniffer dogs because
 - A some of the challenges they face go against their nature
 - B they are unable to climb up ladders
 - C they don't have a well-developed sense of smell

5 Answer the questions with your own opinions.

- 1 Which of the dog breeds mentioned would make the best pet for you? Why?
- 2 Which of the dogs mentioned do you think is the most useful? Why?

6 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in the box. Use the same word twice in each sentence, once as a verb and once as a noun.

ban cost poison present
record research respect work

- 1 The _____ of living has gone up tremendously. Nowadays everything _____ double the price of five years ago.
 - 2 When the government first _____ smoking in public places, most people thought the _____ would be impossible to enforce.
 - 3 We were _____ with a difficult choice: buy a very expensive _____ or turn up at the party empty-handed.
 - 4 _____ and development is one of the most important departments in our company. Here we _____ all kinds of new uses of technology.
 - 5 Most of the Beatles' albums were _____ in this studio. Some went on to break all sales.
 - 6 I believe everybody who fights for human rights deserves our _____, but one of the people I always _____ most was Nelson Mandela.
 - 7 There are many people _____ on the project. My own _____ involves testing materials and checking results.
 - 8 In the past, many people were _____ with arsenic, which is an extremely effective and deadly _____.
- 7 Look back at Verb Zone in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 7.
- 8 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the multi-part verbs from exercise 7.
- 1 We should _____ the amount of meat we eat. Too much meat is bad for our health.
 - 2 If human beings _____ consuming the way we do now, our natural resources will soon run out.
 - 3 If we _____ our planet better, we wouldn't have so many environmental problems now.
 - 4 Dinosaurs _____ millions of years ago.
 - 5 Whole villages _____ by the tsunami.

1 Complete the text with the correct answers.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 A It is estimated | B They are estimated |
| C test mates | D it said |
| 2 A are knowing | B have known |
| C have been known | D know how |
| 3 A recorded | B have been recorded |
| C have recorded | D have recording |
| 4 A is think | B considering |
| C consider | D is considered |
| 5 A is eat ng | B are eating |
| C are been eaten | D is eaten |
| 6 A is felt to be | B is felt be ng |
| C is felt to been | D is feeling |
| 7 A is understanding | B is understood |
| C has understood | D has been understood |
| 8 A can caught | B can catching |
| C can be caught | D can catch |
| 9 A s given | B gives |
| C has given | D were given |
| 10 A must take | B must be taken |
| C must have taken | D must be took |

Tuna fish in danger

Tuna are truly amazing fish. The largest ones can weigh up to 700kg, and yet they move gracefully and quickly.

_____ that some tuna can swim as fast as 50mph, though their average speed is only 10mph. As they are migratory fish, they _____ to travel thousands of miles in their lifetime. Some types of tuna _____ diving 250 metres or less than one minute.

Yet, in spite of their prowess, tuna fish are in trouble. The main reason is that tuna _____ to be one of the world's most popular fish. Tuna _____ by poor people for whom the fish is an essential part of their diet, but also by the rich. No dish of sushi or sashimi _____ complete without a few slivers of tuna.

Overfishing? _____ to be the main culprit. To make matters worse, more and more tuna _____ and processed by huge ships, known as floating factories. Moreover, multinationals negotiate unfair deals with poor coastal countries that give them access to the fish. As a rule, no more than 5 per cent of the value of the tuna _____ to the developing countries that own the fish stocks.

Environmental organizations claim that urgent action _____ to save the tuna.



2 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one. Use 2-5 words and the word in brackets.

- People think her husband is very rich. (believed)
Her husband _____ very rich.
- They say that she was a model when she was young. (thought)
She _____ a model when she was young.
- People believe that all Mediterranean people have dark hair. (assumed)
It _____ all Mediterranean people have dark hair.
- They said the President was coming for a visit. (expected)
The President _____ for a visit.
- They say that eating a lot of vegetables is good for your health. (considered)
It _____ eating a lot of vegetables is good for your health.

3 Rewrite the active sentences in two different ways, using the verbs in brackets.

- They think the escaped criminal is living in France. (believe)
The escaped _____
- They think up to a thousand people have lost their homes in the storm. (estimate)

- They think the missing racehorse may be dead. (fear)

- They think early treatment is extremely important to cure the disease. (feel)

- They think all scientists are good with technology, but this isn't always the case. (assume)

- They think sloth bears are extremely lazy creatures. (know)

- They believe Chinese sailors arrived on the coast of North America first. (think)

EXTRA CHALLENGE

Read the slide and tick the examples of responsible tourism in examples 1–5.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|---|
| 1 A Stay in locally owned hotels. | — | 6 Stay in international resorts. | — |
| 2 A Travel by car and plane. | — | 7 Go walking and cycling. | — |
| 3 A Buy lots of tacky souvenirs. | — | 8 Buy handicrafts. | — |
| 4 A Eat in luxury restaurants. | — | 9 Taste the local cuisine. | — |
| 5 A Have a quick shower. | — | 10 Enjoy long, relaxing baths. | — |

Responsible tourism

• **Definition:** tourism that creates better places for people to live in and better places to visit.



Aim: to reduce the negative impact tourism can have, conserve natural areas and heritage, share benefits with local communities, teach tourists about local customs, etc.

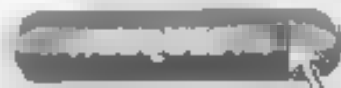
• **Objective:** to make the experience of tourism more enjoyable and sustainable both for local people and visitors.

Now match the examples of irresponsible tourism from the exercise above to the problems they can cause below.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------------|---|
| Water shortages | — | Pollution | — |
| Profiteering going local people | / | Bad working conditions | — |
| | | waste of resources | — |

Write one possible explanation for these other negative effects that tourism can have.

- 1 Coral reefs are damaged.
- 2 Forest fires.
- 3 Birds stop nesting.
- 4 Seas and lakes are polluted.
- 5 Marine life is killed or are damaged.



Go online and find the answers to the questions.

- 1 What do these three jobs with animals involve: veterinary, wildlife snake maker, wildlife biologist?
- 2 Find the names and photos of three yepes animals that inhabit the Galápagos National Park.
- 3 What is the dead-end animal in the world?
- 4 Find the names of celebrities who are against the fur trade.
- 5 Which one of these soups does not have an animal part in it: shark, fish, spider, eg. soup, oxtail soup.
- 6 What is the name of the panda habitat in the World Wildlife Fund in Nature Suze?

GARY & GARY GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. What has Gary climbed onto?



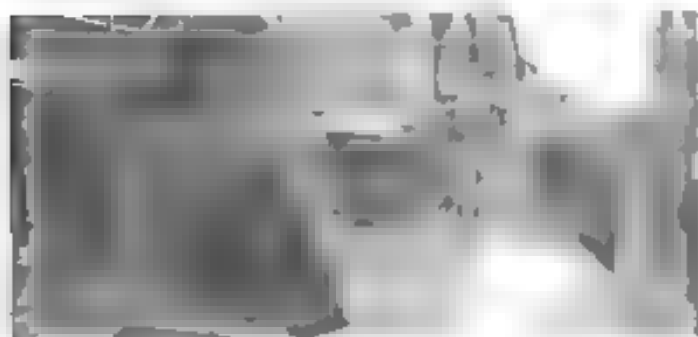
INTERACTION

Getting someone's attention

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say

- when you are upset by something?
- when you are trying to get people's attention at the beginning of a meeting?
- when you want to apologise for not having any money with you?



- 2 Complete the exchanges between a campaigner and two different people in the street, using expressions in the box. Listen and check.

heard the terrible news completely opposed
ridiculous to trouble you absolutely disagree
a minute of your time strongly That's

Campaigner: Excuse me madam, could I just have

Woman: If it's money you're after the answer is no

Campaigner: No madam, it's nothing like that. I was wondering if you were aware of the plans to extend the airport and build a new runway

Woman: Extend the airport you say? I'm _____ to that. As it is, we're right in the flight path. If we get any more planes flying over we won't be able to sleep a wink!

Campaigner: Well, that's exactly what the council is planning to do. They argue it'll improve transport connections and make this city more attractive for people to live in

Woman: That's _____! If we get any more noise pollution, the value of our homes will go down even further

Campaigner: If you feel that _____ about it, perhaps you'd like to sign our petition?

Woman: Absolutely! Hand me your pen, young man

Campaigner: I'm sorry _____ sir, but could you just ask you a question?

Man: All right, but I'm in a bit of a rush

Campaigner: Have _____ about the airport?

Man: The airport? What about it? Has there been an accident?

Campaigner: Nothing like that sir, but they're planning to build another runway and expand

Man: That's great news. I used to work in construction, but with the crisis I got laid off. Anything that'll create jobs is fine by me

Campaigner: It seems that the council has contracted a foreign firm to do the work.

Man: _____, outraged

Campaigner: They claim there aren't enough skilled workers here

Man: I'm _____ with that. We have plenty of qualified labour. Pass me that pen and I'll sign straight away

- 3 Find words or expressions in the exchanges that mean:

- the route that planes take between one airport and another
- lose your job for economic or business reasons
- be unable to sleep
- be in a hurry
- give or pass
- place where planes take off and land

- 4 Which three words in the box cannot be used for strong disapproval? What do these three words mean?

absurd appealing appalling dreadful
ludicrous outrageous ridiculous
scandalous sensible shocking terrific

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 5 Revise the Express yourself box on page 80 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

WRITING

An email



Talking about possible situations

- 1 Compare the two sentences and answer questions A and B

- 1 If you buy a dog, you'll have to walk it three times a day
- 2 If you bought a dog, it would always keep you company

A What grammar structure is used in each sentence?

1

2

B Which sentence is more real and which is more hypothetical?

Real: _____ Hypothetical: _____

- 2 Read the extract from a friend's email and complete the reply with words in the box.

have to you'd learn might even be would certainly be
wouldn't be able could be you'd make would be difficult

Managed to pass all my exams – and with good marks as well. My parents are so pleased they've finally given in and said I can have a pet. I'm thinking of a snake! What do you think?

Pat

To: Pat

Subject: Re: Pet

Hi Pat

Thanks for your email. Great to hear from you and congratulations on passing your exams. I knew you could do it. I know you've always wanted to have a pet, but I think you should consider all options very carefully before deciding.

Having a snake _____ exotic and

Some snakes are really beautiful. I imagine a

a lot, looking after it and observing it. It

is _____ useful for your future

studies, _____ but _____ your

friends jealous as well. They'd all want to come and see it.

But have you thought how boring having a snake is?

They spend most of their time sleeping.

And remember, you _____ to snake

it or play with it much. And then, the food! You _____

feed it live mice, which might be quite

unpleasant. And in the end, if you didn't like it any more, it

is _____ to get rid of it.

If I were you, I'd find out more about snakes before making your final decision. Why don't you visit a specialist pet shop to ask for more details? How about talking to someone who's got one? They would be able to tell you what they're like as pets first hand.

Hope this is helpful. Good luck with your decision!

- 3 Read the email again and underline all the structures for giving advice in the first and last paragraphs.

- 4 Match the pets to the possible advantages and disadvantages.

Pets	Advantages	Disadvantages
1 Tortoise	cute and easy to keep	smelly and can be aggressive
2 Hamster	very quiet	boring, sleeps half the year
3 Cat	attractive and lively	scratches the furniture
4 Parrot	lively and playful	keeps you awake at night
5 Ferret	independent	noisy

- 5 Read the Writing Reference on page 119. You have received an email from a friend thinking about getting a pet. Reply with some advice regarding its suitability. Use any of the examples of pets and their advantages/disadvantages on this page, or your own ideas. Follow the instructions.

- 1 Use the email on this page as a model
- 2 Divide your work into clear paragraphs, using this plan:
Paragraph 1 – start your email.
Paragraph 2 – write about positive aspects of the pet
Paragraph 3 – write about negative aspects of the pet
Paragraph 4 – finish your email with some advice

Reminder

Getting away

READING

- 1 Look at the title and read the first paragraph of the article quickly. What is a film extra?

Day in the life of an extra

You don't know me, but you may have seen me. I was that guy sitting at the back of the train when the detectives burst in, the elegant guest at the wedding, the mud-splattered soldier in a trench. I've been all of those, and more, because I earn my living as a film extra. Perhaps I should say as a supporting artist (SA), which is the new, trendy term.

Don't get me wrong – I like my job, but it's far from glamorous. You often have to get up in the middle of the night and travel for hours because, obviously, the film crew wants to take advantage of as many daylight hours as possible.

Once you get to the location, you are shown into the bus. This is where extras wait, hoping someone from the crew will come and pick them for a scene. The more professional extras bring along whole suitcases full of clothes and stuff to help them look right for the shot. A sense of humour, some novels and a tablet loaded with games and crosswords also come in handy to fight the boredom.

In a historical film or a costume drama, things are different. Directors do their utmost to avoid those embarrassing bloopers. So all extras are herded into a wardrobe tent and dressed in appropriate outfits. If it's a war or a disaster film, they may also get covered in bloody wounds and bandages, or generously sprinkled with dust and dirt, none of which is very comfortable. But if you're lucky, you might get sent to the props trailer and come out with an artillery piece or a sword.

Finally, you're called onto the set. You hear the command: Action! This is followed by minutes of frenetic activity then more waiting and standing around, as cameras and lights are adjusted. Then the retakes, which can go on forever.

So why do I do it? For one, it beats sitting in a boring office, plus it's quite well-paid – at least in Britain. You can earn about £75 a day, and more if you've got a special skill, like dancing or fighting. Apparently, in Eastern Europe, extras only charge \$20 and in the USA they're on minimum wages.

- 2 Read the text again and choose the correct answers.

- 1 The main reason why extras have to get up early is that
 A they travel all over the world
 B locations are very far away
 C camera operators need good light
 D filming at night is more glamorous

- 2 What do we learn about extras in paragraph 3?
 A Most of them are very funny
 B They wait until the director chooses them
 C They like playing games and reading
 D The experienced ones come to work prepared

- 3 What do we learn about costumes?
 A They play an important part in guaranteeing continuity
 B They are very uncomfortable
 C All extras have to bring their own
 D They are not very important in war or disaster films

- 4 What do we learn about an extra's earnings?
 A They are similar to the minimum wage
 B They are much better in the USA than in other countries
 C They are higher if the extra has special abilities
 D They are less than what people in an office job earn

- 5 Which of these statements sums up best how the writer feels about his job?
 A He does it mainly for the money
 B He enjoys it, but he thinks many people have the wrong idea about it
 C He says it's glamorous, but not very well paid
 D He says it isn't glamorous, but he likes the money

Film words

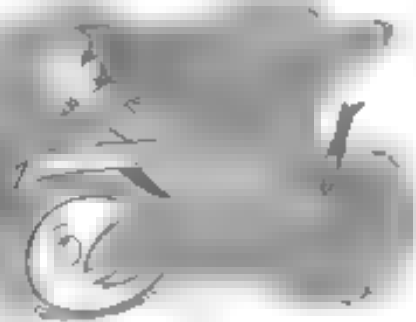
- 3 Match the words to the definitions.

- 1 bloopers
 2 a shot
 3 out of focus
 4 a take
 5 fluff (your) lines

- A clear sharp
 B embarrassing mistake in a scene or shot
 C forget your text
 D uninterrupted filming of a scene
 E the way a camera records a scene

VOCABULARY

Idioms which indicate emotions



4 Match explanations 1-8 to the words in bold in idioms A-H.

- 1 part of a shirt, coat, jacket, etc that goes around the neck
- 2 in a state of depression or melancholy
- 3 so happy you are almost floating
- 4 activity that takes some time and is extremely boring
- 5 very close to vomiting, any further provocation will make you throw up
- 6 part of the hair that is embedded in the skin
- 7 can be a symptom of stress, shock, fear or pain

- A (be/get/wake up) in a cold sweat
- B get hot under the collar
- C brush to the roots of (your) hair
- D (be) over the moon
- E watch paint dry
- F (be) sick to the back teeth
- G (feel/ be) down in the dumps

5 Complete the sentences with idioms from exercise 1. Put the verbs in the correct forms and make other changes if necessary.

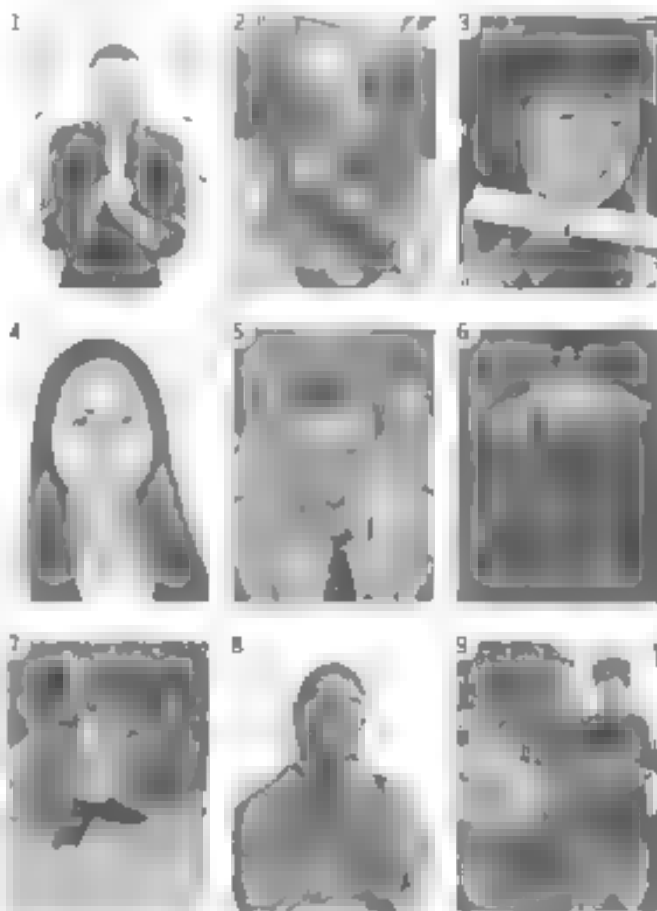
- 1 Many citizens _____ of the government's excuses - they want solutions now
- 2 I had a terrible nightmare in which I was chased by monsters and I _____
- 3 Sam _____ when the teacher praised him - he's really modest
- 4 I think listening to political speeches is like _____ It makes me fall asleep
- 5 My dad _____ whenever I bring up the subject of tattoos. He just won't allow me to have one
- 6 Michele _____ for a while because he can't find a job
- 7 Beatriz _____ when she saw her excellent exam results

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Adjectives which indicate emotions

6 Match the adjectives which indicate emotions to the pictures that show these feelings.

ashamed ecstatic enraged envious
guilty hurt moody proud thoughtful



7 Complete the sentences with adjectives from exercise 6.

- 1 I felt really _____ when I won the award
- 2 The teacher became _____ when he caught the students copying
- 3 Pablo felt _____ when his friends reminded him of his bad behaviour at the party
- 4 My sister is quite _____. She can be happy one minute and bad tempered the next
- 5 The young singer felt absolutely _____ when the jury declared her the winner of the talent show
- 6 I was really _____ when Sylvie didn't invite me to her party. I thought we were friends!
- 7 Lucy is really _____ of her friend Elena's success and good looks
- 8 Pierre's little brother felt so _____ about breaking the window that he confessed to their mum
- 9 Jin looked _____ as he sat there considering the possible ways of dealing with the problem

GRAMMAR

Reported speech: time & location expressions

1 Complete the table with the correct verb forms.

Verb tense	Direct speech	Reported speech
Present simple	I work in Madrid.	He said (that) he _____ Madrid.
Present continuous	I _____ law at university.	She said that she was studying law at university.
Past simple	I went to bed late.	He said (that) he _____ bed late.
Past continuous	She was dancing until 3 o'clock in the morning.	She said that she _____ until 3 o'clock in the morning.
Present perfect simple	I _____ two books.	He said he _____ written two books.
Present perfect continuous	I've been waiting emails all morning.	She said that she _____ emails all morning.
Past perfect simple	I'd seen the film before.	He said (that) he _____ that film before.
Past perfect continuous	I _____ a night.	She said that she'd been traveling a _____.
Will	I'll help you with the project.	He said (that) he _____ with the project.
Can	I can _____ and you save _____ money.	She said that she could _____ some money.
Must	I must go home.	He said that he _____ home.
Should	I should visit my grandmother.	She said that she _____ visit her grandmother.

2 Which two verb tenses do not change?

3 Which type of verb does not normally change?

4 Rewrite the questions in reported speech.

- Where are you from? He asked (me) _____
- What do you do? She asked (me) _____
- Are you married? She asked (me) _____
- Can I help you? He asked (me) _____

5 Answer the questions about exercise 4.

- What is the correct word order in a reported question?
Subject, verb / Verb, subject
- Do you use auxiliary verbs in a reported question? Y/N
- Which words do you use to report questions without a question word?

6 Rewrite the orders in reported speech.

- Be quiet (teacher to students)
The teacher told _____
- Don't copy (teacher to students)
The teacher told _____

7 Put the reported sentences into direct speech. Make the necessary changes to the expressions of time and location.

- Zvonimir said that he had to wear a uniform for that job.

- Ana said that she wouldn't be able to attend the meeting the following day.

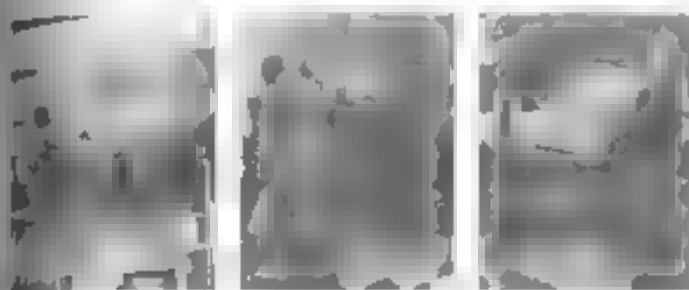
- Aaron said that he hadn't seen any films the previous week.

- Sandy said she couldn't meet us there that day.

LISTENING

- 1 You are going to listen to a stuntman talking about his job. Before you listen, match the words from the recording to the definitions.

1 punch	—	A going after, pursuit
2 multi-storey	—	B a building with many floors
3 chase	—	C important person
4 brawl	—	D support
5 get credit for	—	E hitting with your fist
6 back	—	F receive recognition
7 heavyweight	—	G death
8 fatality	—	H fight



- 2 Look at the pictures and tick which skills you think a stuntman needs.
- A Language skills
B Strength
C Martial arts
D Falling
E Flying planes
F Computer skills
- 3 Can you think of any other skills a stuntman would need?

- 4 Listen and check your answers to exercises 2 and 3.

- 5 Listen again. Complete the summary of the recording with the word(s) that you hear.

- 1 Nowadays, stuntmen are called _____ because there are not only men, but also a lot of _____.
- 2 Stuntmen need to have _____ in order to perform their stunts.
- 3 Apart from the physical preparation, stuntmen have to be _____ to take risks.
- 4 Stuntmen have to be able _____ and they have to learn how _____.
- 5 Many stuntmen are also _____ racing drivers.
- 6 If a stuntman wants to have a lot of work, he should learn how to use _____.

- 7 Early stunts in westerns included the typical fight in a _____.
- 8 A stuntman has to _____ for the star of a movie.
- 9 Stuntmen take all the risks, but don't get any _____.
- 10 Unfortunately, there is no _____ for stunt performers, though they started a campaign in _____.
- 11 Around _____ people are injured while making films every year.

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

- 6 Answer the questions.

- 1 What must stuntmen know how to avoid?
- 2 How should stuntmen be physically? Can you remember the three adjectives?
- 3 Which martial arts are mentioned?
- 4 Which two types of falling are very popular?
- 5 Name two things stuntmen have to do with cars.
- 6 Name two other sports stuntmen should be able to do.
- 7 What happens in a saloon fight?
- 8 Which actor likes to do his own stunts?
- 9 Which celebrities supported the stuntmen's campaign to get their own Oscar?
- 10 Name three common injuries stuntmen regularly sustain.

- 7 Write these sentences in your language.

- 1 What does it take to become a stuntman?
- 2 Make no mistake: a stuntman is no star.
- 3 Stuntmen make sure the stars are safe and sound.

READING

- 1 Look at the photos and read the title of the article. Can you identify any of the actors and films? What type of film is Hong Kong famous for?

Look In

Largest, after Bollywood and Hollywood in the years between 1986 and 1992, Hong Kong churned out hundreds of movies, which earned a record-breaking \$5.55 billion in 1995.

Some of the earliest Hong Kong films were based on Chinese wuxia novels, which featured heroic, sword-wielding warriors who often possessed mystical powers. Other popular post-World War II genres included Mandarin-language musicals and Cantonese language comedies and action.

It wasn't until the 1970s that Hong Kong movies achieved global fame thanks to Bruce Lee – the martial arts specialist and actor who was born in America but raised in Hong Kong. Although Lee only starred in four films before his untimely death at the age of 32, the fourth one, *Enter the Dragon*, became the first American-Hong Kong co-production and grossed around \$55200 million worldwide. Bruce Lee developed his own style (a mixture of traditional wuxia with modern elements), and traded in the swords for bare-handed fighting, which is why he is seen as the father of Hong Kong's trademark Kung Fu films.

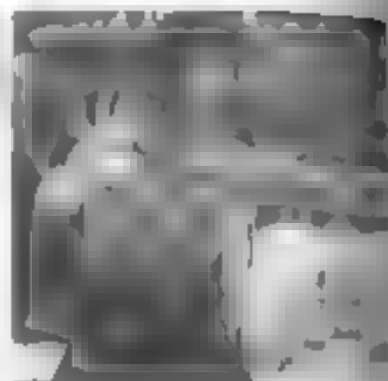
In the 1980s, Jackie Chan took over where Bruce Lee had left off. Chan's background was in Beijing opera, but he started work as a stuntman. Though his first movies were not very

choreographer Yuen's 1978 directorial debut, *Snake in the Eagle's Shadow*, was also Chan's first hit, introducing his characteristic mixture of slapstick comedy and Kung Fu set in a modern urban environment.

floor with all her opponents, while the Wachowskis' trilogy *The Matrix* seems to flow from one breathtaking fight into another. This is not surprising, given that all fight scenes were choreographed by Yuen.

Many talented directors and actors followed Yuen's lead and moved to Hollywood, lured by bigger budgets and greater fame, which led to a talent drain in Hong Kong. Business had not been going well since the mid-1990s, when local gangsters – who had previously limited themselves to demanding bribes – started really hurting the industry through the mass production of pirate videos and DVDs. At home Hong Kong movies faced increased competition from American imports, while their traditional Asian export markets were being flooded by highly popular South Korean films.

Recently, the Hong Kong film industry seems to have found a new lease of life in collaborations with other industries, particularly those of mainland China and Taiwan. Hong Kong professionals have contributed to the success of box office hits like *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon* and *Hero*, both of which go back to the mystic wuxia tradition.



GLOSSARY

churn out	produce in big quantities
gross	earn before any (tax) deductions
slapstick	physical type of comedy full of absurd situations and violent actions
bribe	money paid illegally to influence someone's conduct
new lease of life	a period when you find new energy and vigor

VOCABULARY

Alternatives to
say and tell

2 Read the text quickly and choose the best summary.

- A The Hong Kong film industry was booming between the 1980s and mid-1990s.
- B The Hong Kong film industry has had some influence on Hollywood, but was never of global importance.
- C The Hong Kong film industry became world famous in the 1970s, deteriorated in the mid-1990s and has recently been involved in some new projects.

3 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 What do we learn about the Hong Kong film industry in the first paragraph?
 - A It used to be bigger than Bollywood and Hollywood.
 - B It used to mass produce lots of movies.
 - C For about seven years it broke all records.
 - D In 1992, it earned more money than Hollywood.
- 2 What is said about Bruce Lee in paragraph 3?
 - A He was born in the USA, but died in Hong Kong.
 - B He was born in Hong Kong and died very young.
 - C He made 32 films before he died.
 - D He was responsible for creating the typical Kung Fu film.
- 3 What do we learn about Jackie Chan in paragraph 4?
 - A He got his breakthrough in 1978.
 - B He imitated Bruce Lee.
 - C He wasn't a very good stuntman.
 - D He used to sing opera.
- 4 What do *Kill Bill* and *The Matrix* have in common?
 - A Both films were made by Hong Kong directors.
 - B Both films starred heroines who were martial artists.
 - C The same person was in charge of the fight scenes.
 - D Both films consist of two parts.
- 5 Why did the Hong Kong film industry decline?
 - A It was a mixture of loss of talent, competition from abroad and copyright problems.
 - B The industry was taken over by gangsters.
 - C South Korean films had become much more popular than Hong Kong ones.
 - D The Hong Kong film industry could no longer export films to the USA.
- 6 What has happened to the Hong Kong film industry recently?
 - A It has started producing more films again.
 - B It has started collaborating more closely with Hollywood.
 - C It has returned to its roots.
 - D It has successfully participated in producing some hit movies.

4 Match the sentences to an appropriate reporting verb below. Then rewrite them, using the structures indicated.

- 1 I'll tidy my room and do the dishes every day if you let me go to the concert.
- 2 It's your fault we couldn't go away this weekend – you didn't buy the tickets in time.
- 3 I didn't break the window – honestly.
- 4 I'm really sorry I forgot your birthday.
- 5 We've got some great news: we're going to get married.
- 6 Would you like me to help you?
- 7 I'm afraid I won't do any more overtime this month.
- 8 All right, it's true – I told Louise all about you.
- 9 You must let me pay – I really want to.
- 10 Why don't we go and see a play?

— Paul suggested that we should

— Danny promised that

Marcelina apologized for

— Hector insisted that

My brother denied that

My friends blamed me for

Lara admitted that

Eva and Luke announced that

— Emilio offered to

Rupert refused to

5 Look back at Verb Zone in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 8.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the multi-part verbs from exercise 5.

- 1 The scriptwriter _____ a brilliant idea for a new comedy series.
- 2 I'm the assistant manager. Whenever my boss is away, I have _____ her.
- 3 When I got back from my holidays, I had _____ lots of emails.
- 4 The director's first film received rave reviews, but after that he was never able to _____ the critics' expectations again.
- 5 Tim broke his mother's favourite vase, but he managed to convince her it was the cat. Looks like he _____ again.

1 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 My dad offered _____ a lift to the airport.
A giving me B to give me C to give to me
- 2 The forest guard warned _____ a fire.
A us not to make B us not make C us not making
- 3 Lars suggested _____ for a drink after class.
A us to go B us going C going
- 4 The company accused _____ leaking confidential information.
A him for B him of C him to
- 5 He threatened _____ to the press if _____ didn't give him any money.
A to speak B speaking C speak
- 6 She insisted _____ the bill.
A on paying B for paying C on paying
- 7 I want _____ to my party.
A that you come B you coming C you to come
- 8 The travel agent advised _____ the tickets in advance.
A us booking B us to book C to book
- 9 The accused denied _____ at the scene of the crime.
A been B having been C to be
- 10 The police blamed _____ the accident.
A for causing B of causing C him for causing

2 Rewrite the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one. Use 2-5 words and the word in brackets.

- 1 My brother said that he would phone as soon as possible (promised).
My brother _____ as soon as possible
- 2 If _____ were you, I wouldn't get such a large dog (advised).
He _____ such a large dog
- 3 It would be best if you took the early train (recommended).
He _____ the early train
- 4 Christie said she was sorry that she had revealed my secret (apologized).
Christie _____ my secret.
- 5 My uncle said he would pay for our ice creams (offered).
My uncle _____ for our ice creams.



3 Match the quotes to the famous films they come from.

- 1 Do, or do not. There is no try.
- 2 It takes a great deal of bravery to stand up to your enemies, but a great deal more to stand up to your friends.
- 3 I'm the king of the world.
- 4 Mama always said life was like a box of chocolates. You never know what you're gonna get.
- 5 'I'll be back.'
- 6 I'm going to make him an offer he can't refuse.
- 7 Oh yes, the past can hurt. But you can either run from it or learn from it.

- A The Lion King
- B Forrest Gump
- C Titanic
- D Harry Potter and the Sorcerer's Stone
- E The Empire Strikes Back
- F The Terminator
- G The Godfather

4 Rewrite the quotes in reported speech, using verb + to + infinitive, verb + gerund or verb + that structures. Use a different verb from the box each time.

explain warn advise promise recommend
threaten admit announce insist offer

- 1 Yoda
- 2 Dumbledore
- 3 Jack
- 4 Forrest
- 5 The terminator
- 6 Don Corleone
- 7 Rafiki

EXTRA CHALLENGE

You have been asked by a director to come up with three ideas for films which appeal to teenagers and young adults. Choose suitable genres in the box and then complete the information with your own ideas.

animation action adventure drama comedy
gangster horror romantic comedy (rom-com)
science fiction (sci-fi) spy western thriller

Which film do you think you and your friends would most like to watch?

IDEA 1

Title: *Never Say Never*

Genre: _____

Main character(s) and actor(s): _____

Plot summary: _____

IDEA 2

Title: *Heart Of Gold*

Genre: _____

Main character(s) and actor(s): _____

Plot summary: _____

IDEA 3

Title: *Aliens Are Human Too*

Genre: _____

Main character(s) and actor(s): _____

Plot summary: _____

Go on-line and find the answers to the questions.

- 1 What movie blooper can be seen in the background of a battle scene in the 1995 film *Braveheart*?
- 2 How many people go to see Bollywood movies every day?
- 3 Which country does the director Quentin Tarantino always make reference to in his films?
- 4 Who was the first film actor to play the role of secret agent James Bond?
- 5 How many hours a day were spent keeping Seneca Crane's beard looking perfect while filming *The Hunger Games*?
- 6 How many people auditioned for the role of Edward Cullen in the *Twilight* films?

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. Do you remember what you do when you stand in for someone?



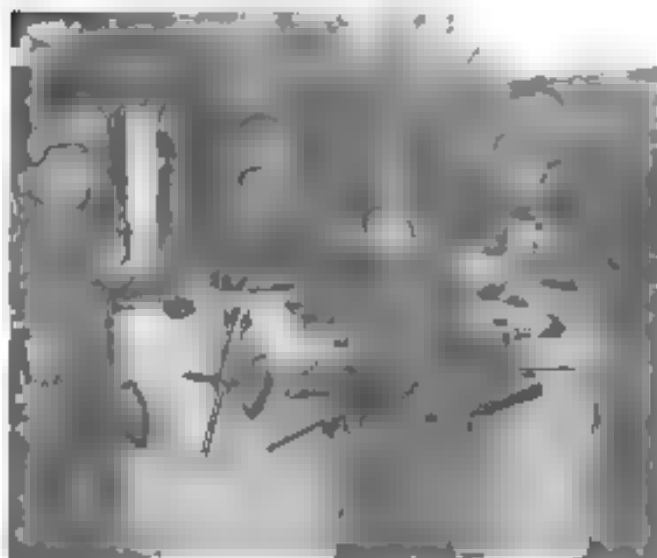
INTERACTION

Reaching a common consensus

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say

- when you want to persuade someone to do something?
- when you want to know if someone has reached a conclusion?
- when you don't feel like doing something?



- 2 Complete the phone conversations between three friends deciding what to do, using words and expressions in the box. Listen and check.

you'll love convinced like the sound up to that sort Come on the plan In the mood make a decision Catch fancy

Tony: Hi Paula. Are you and Tracey
I _____ anything this
Saturday?

Paula: We are actually. We're going to see that new film
that's on at the Richmond.

Tony: Never mind that – you can go to the movies any
time. Mark came up with a much better plan: he
wants the four of us to go and play paintball!

Paula: Paintball? I don't really
I _____ of that. It
sounds sticky and messy.

Tony: Don't worry about that, they'll give you protective
clothing. I _____ say
yes. It'll be exciting.

Paula: I'm not a
me call Tracey and see what she thinks.

Tony: OK. I _____ you'll be in.

Paula: Hi Tracey. Are you still up for going to the cinema?

Tracey: Sure. That was a
wasn't it?

Paula: Tony called. He wants us to come and play
paintball on Saturday.

Tracey: I'm not sure if I'm
I _____ for that. I think
it's a pretty intense game and I'm feeling wiped
out. I prefer something relaxing. What about you?

Paula: I'm not a
bothered either. I'll call Tony and tell him to call me.
Mark.

Tracey: Mark? Is he coming too? In that case, count me in.

Paula: I didn't know you fancied Mark.

Tracey: I don't – he's an idiot. I just
I _____ covering him in
paint.

Tony: So did you two
I _____?

Paula: I _____ of I'm still not
that keen, but Tracey wants to give it a go.

Tony: Fantastic. I'm sure
I _____ it. Mark will be
pleased.

Paula: Hmm – I'm sure he will.

- 3 Find words or expressions in the conversations that mean:

- think of an idea or plan
- exhausted
- dirty, untidy
- include someone in a plan
- try something
- be enthusiastic about

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 4 Revise the Express yourself box on page 90 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

WRITING

A story



Words and expressions for giving reasons

- 1 Complete the sentences in two different ways, using the correct forms of the words in brackets.
- Lara lost the race (fail)
because _____
because of / due to _____
- 2 The city centre was closed to the traffic (demonstration)
because / since / as _____
because of / due to _____
- 2 Read the text and underline all the words and expressions for giving reasons.

About three months ago my sister ¹ **asked** me to go to the shops for her. She was getting ready to go to a party and had run out of hairspray. At first, ² **I'd said** no because I was doing my homework, but my sister ³ **asked again and again** and finally ⁴ **I said yes**.



When I got to the haircare products, I felt a little lost as I never use any of that stuff. That's when a smartly-dressed woman pounced on me. I nearly jumped and she ***said sorry**. Then she ***said** that she was looking for a young girl with hair like mine to appear in a TV ad. I couldn't believe I had been chosen because of my hair - that bright red curly mass I never really paid any attention to.

That's why, one week later, I found myself in a TV studio, with lots of people fussing over me and 'saying' how lovely my hair was. I spent about three hours trying on different outfits and having my hair and face done by the stylists. When I finally saw myself in the mirror, I barely recognized the sophisticated young lady looking back at me!

I had great fun shooting the ad as well, due to the fact that I was surrounded by a group of young dancers, twisting and shaking their hair. At the end of the day, they took me home in a limousine, with a basketful of free beauty products on my lap. It was an amazing experience – and all because of my sister!

- 3** Read the text again and replace the verbs in bold with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.

agree apologise explain insist
persuade refuse remark

- 4 Read the *Writing Reference* on page 130. You have been asked to write a story for the school magazine with the title *The best day of my life*. You could write a true story or invent one about a special party, trip, a competition you won, etc. Follow the instructions.
- 1 Use the story on this page as a model
 - 2 Divide your work into clear paragraphs, using this plan
Paragraph 1 – introduce your story
Paragraphs 2 and 3 – describe what happened
Paragraph 4 – explain how the day ended and how you felt about it

Reminder

- Use appropriate structures for giving reasons
- Use a variety of verbs

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins or other markings on the paper.

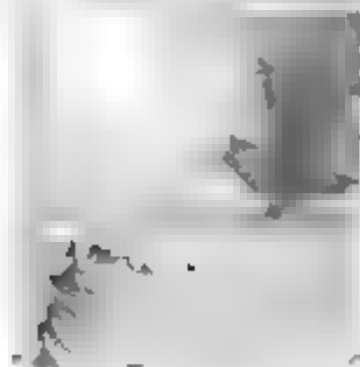
Going for gold

READING

- 1 Look at the photos and the title of the text. Scan the first paragraph and note down the following:

where and when the jump took place
from what altitude
who jumped

The new superman



On 5th May 2013, 48-year-old Russian daredevil Valery Rozov recorded the world's highest base jump when he hung himself off the north face of Mount Everest from an altitude of 7 220 metres. He made his jump clad in a blue wing suit with bits of red and yellow – newly designed for the occasion – which made

him look like a cross between Superman and Spiderman.

Base jumping is an extreme sport in which participants jump from bridges, tall buildings and towers. The previous Guinness world record for a base jump was held by Glenn Singleman and Heather Swan who jumped from Mount Meru in the Indian Himalayas from a height of 6 604 metres. Rozov's own previous record had been a jump of 5 420 metres.

Rozov started climbing Mount Everest on the Chinese side, from where it took him 4 days to get from his base camp to the jump site. At precisely 2 30 pm local time – 60 years after Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay had scaled the top of Everest (8 848 metres), Rozov took his giant leap.

At the moment of the jump, weather conditions were adverse, with temperatures of minus 18 degrees Celsius, which meant the air was very thin. As a result, it took Rozov longer than usual to move from free-fall to flying. Once he managed to stabilize himself, he flew for nearly a minute at a speed of around 200 km/h before landing safely on the Rongbuk glacier at an altitude of 5 950 metres.

With over 10 000 jumps under his belt, Rozov was already a skydiving legend when he started training for his latest, massive challenge. During his career, he repeatedly hit the headlines – for instance in 2009, when he became the first person ever to skydive into an active volcano on the Kamchatka Peninsula in the Russian Far East. In 2012, he successfully completed a 6 420-metre jump from another Himalayan peak, the Shivling (6 543 metres), as a final trial before Everest.

On his return, Rozov admitted that the Everest experience had been extremely challenging, both physically and mentally, and that his jump could easily have gone wrong. In the end, however, it had all been worth it as he was able to make his dream come true.

- 2 Read the text and circle T (true) or F (false). Rewrite the false sentences below to make them true.

- Rozov's suit bore some resemblance to Superman and Spiderman's outfits. T F
- Rozov was also the holder of the previous Guinness record. T F
- Rozov jumped from the top of Mount Everest. T F
- His jump paid homage to the first mountaineers who had reached the top of Everest just over half a century ago. T F
- Due to the low temperatures, Rozov's flight was slower than normal. T F
- Rozov fell / flew over 2 000 metres. T
- Before his Everest jump, Rozov had never been in the news before. T F
- After his jump, Rozov said he regretted doing it. T F

More words which mean 'big' and 'small'

- 3 Find one adjective in paragraph 3 and one in paragraph 5 which mean *very big*.

Paragraph 3
Paragraph 5

- 4 Divide the words below into two groups, meaning *very big* or *very small*.

colossal diminutive enormous
gigantic giant great huge
infinitesimal immense microscopic
minute monumental minuscule
tiny titanic vast

Very big

Very small

VOCABULARY

People associated with sport

5 Match the sportspeople in the box to the definitions.

pine cox cheerleader bar boy/girl caddie

- 1 This person is the head of a rowing crew and controls the direction of the boat.
- 2 This person watches a tennis game to make sure the rules aren't broken.
- 3 This person assists a golfer, carrying their clubs and equipment.
- 4 This person collects balls in a tennis match when they are out of play and supplies players with them.
- 5 This person encourages the crowds at sports events to cheer for – and support their team.

6 Replace the words in bold with the correct sportspeople.

- 1 The **mechanic** was called in to look at the driver's leg.
- 2 The **referee** said that the ball was out and gave the point to Nada.
- 3 The **bar girls** danced and twirled around the field before the game.
- 4 The **reporter** roared when the striker scored with a minute left to play.
- 5 The **caddie** shouted at her crew to make them row faster.

7 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

- 1 After a rain delay, an **announce** was made that the match would be suspended.
- 2 After the injury, the player needed three months of **(physiotherapist)**.
- 3 It's my job to detect any **(mechanic)** defects in the engine.
- 4 The **manage** team has decided to invest more money in young players.
- 5 He is a very well-known **(comment)**. Thousands of people listen to him each Saturday.
- 6 Physical **(rain)** is an important part of the preparation of any sportsperson.
- 7 As a news **report**, have to be up to date with current affairs.
- 8 **(coach)** is an activity that is used in business as well as in sports. It can help people to understand what their goals are and how to reach them.
- 9 The **(referee)** sent the player off for deliberately kicking one of the opposition.

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Words connected to football

8 Complete the text with words in the box.

beat draw dribbling forwards foul freekick
halftime injury midfielders nil penalty pitch
rugby sending... off shoot-out won

In case you didn't know, football is played by two teams of **eleven** players. One of the players is the goalkeeper or goalie, while the others are **forwards** and strikers, also called **strikers**.

The goalkeeper is allowed to touch the ball with their hands, but only in the **goal** area they defend. The other ten players have to score by kicking, and passing the ball.

A match lasts 90 minutes, with a 15-minute break, known as stoppage or **injury** time, to make up for delays. Depending on the competition a match that ends in a **draw** is decided by adding 30 minutes extra time, and a penalty

The game is controlled by a referee who can give a **yellow card** or a penalty to a team if an opposition player has touched the ball with their hands or committed a **foul** (made excessive physical contact with an opposition player). The referee can book a player for misconduct by giving them a **yellow card** or a **red card**.

5. Football is also known as soccer, especially in the USA, to differentiate it from American football, which is a sport more similar to **rugby**.

6. The word for zero in football results is **nil**.

7. If the result of a match is Manchester City 2 – Chelsea 0, it means that Manchester City **beat** Chelsea.

9 Match the idioms to the definitions.

- 1 This job is out of my league. I haven't got the experience or the skills to do it.
- 2 The government is determined to tackle the problem of rising inflation.
- 3 We shouldn't let Education become a political football.

- A an issue that causes a lot of disagreement
B not having the same quality or level of excellence
C deal with and solve

- 1 Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Choose from past simple, past continuous and past perfect.

- 1 He _____ (already compete) in the Olympic games when he _____ (win) his first medal.
- 2 They _____ (fly) across the Andes when the plane suddenly _____ (hit) a mountain.
- 3 _____ (never hear) of underwater hockey until I _____ (see) that documentary on TV.
- 4 The long jumper _____ (run) to the board, _____ (jump) and _____ (break) the record.
- 5 I _____ (learn) how to play baseball while _____ (study) in the USA.
- 6 The tournament _____ (take) place in autumn, after the rains _____ (finish).

- 2 Linda and Laura are preparing to go on an InterRail trip around Europe. Today is Wednesday and they are leaving on Friday. Look at their list of things to do and write sentences about what they have done (✓) or have not (✗) done, using the present perfect with just, already and yet.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| ✓ • pick up tickets from train station | ✓ (Linda one hour ago) |
| ✗ • borrow sleeping bags from Sue | ✗ |
| ✓ • buy toiletries | ✓ (Linda this morning) |
| ✓ • update laptop | ✓ (Laura yesterday) |
| ✗ • buy extra memory card for digital camera | ✗ |
| ✓ • send email to hostel in Florence to confirm arrival | ✓ (Laura ten minutes ago) |

Linda has _____

They haven't _____

- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets, using the first, second or third conditional.

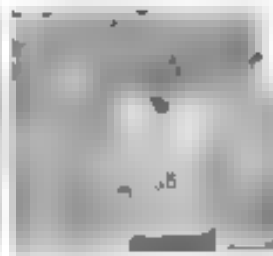
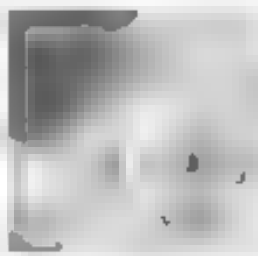
- 1 If you were sensible, you _____ (not go out) the night before an exam.
- 2 The politician may go to prison unless he _____ (pay) his taxes.
- 3 If he _____ (not miss) that penalty, we might have won.
- 4 If I _____ (didn't have) a membership card, _____ (not be able) to go to the gym so often.
- 5 She would have gone on to become a famous tennis player if she _____ (not have) that accident.
- 6 You _____ (not get) into trouble so often if you did your homework.

- 4 Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. You can use all narrative tenses, the present perfect and all conditional forms.

I _____ (just pass) the first exam to become a Pilates teacher. Before _____ (take) my first Pilates class, _____ (never) about a year ago _____ (hear) it and _____ (not go) into sports either. So, how _____ (happy) I _____ (become) so interested in Pilates?

One day when _____ (help) my elderly neighbour Lottie in the garden, _____ (notice) that she _____ (walk and move) much better _____ (ask) her what _____ (do) and she _____ (tell) me that she _____ (go) to Pilates classes for about _____ (six) months. He looks _____ (much less stiff) and she hardly _____ (have to take) any pills any more. Lottie told me 'Pilates is great' if you _____ (exercise) regularly, your body _____ (respond) in an incredible way. You should try it. And it was true. The improvement in my neighbour's mobility _____ (be) amazing. I _____ (not see) it with my own eyes _____ (not believe) it! _____ (sign up) for some classes the next day and _____ (love) it. Just _____ (not speak) to Lottie _____ (not know) about Pilates!

LISTENING



You are going to listen to five people talking about a great achievement. Before you listen, match the words from the recording to the definitions.

- 1 get up (your) courage
 - 2 chore
 - 3 work (your) way up the career ladder
 - 4 clean up (your) act
 - 5 shed
 - 6 get stuck from
 - 7 give it (your) best shot
 - 8 underlying
-
- A be criticized or laughed at
 - B improve the way you do things or behave
 - C fundamental
 - D do something the best way you can
 - E lose
 - F gradually move to better paid jobs with more responsibility
 - G daily or routine task
 - H force yourself to be brave

2 Listen and match the speakers to the achievements.

- Speaker 1 —
 Speaker 2 —
 Speaker 3 —
 Speaker 4 —
 Speaker 5 —

- A obtaining a qualification
- B starting a career
- C making a radical life change
- D giving birth
- E overcoming a fear

3 Listen again and match the five speakers to statements A–F. There is one extra letter you do not need to use.

- Speaker 1 —
 Speaker 2 —
 Speaker 3 —
 Speaker 4 —
 Speaker 5 —

- A A relative pointed me in the right direction
- B A specialist made my dream come true
- C An early success helped me make up my mind
- D My family were not sympathetic
- E My friends gave me a lot of support
- F My doctor gave me a serious warning

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

4 Answer the questions.

- 1 What was speaker 1 afraid of?

- 2 What can speaker 2 do nowadays?

- 3 What was the job of speaker 2?

- 4 What degree has speaker 3 got?

- 5 What health problems did speaker 3 have?

- 6 What did speaker 3 do last Saturday?

- 7 What school did speaker 4 want to get into?

- 8 What is the name of the daughter of speaker 5?

5 Write these sentences in your language.

- 1 My family never took my problem seriously.

- 2 I'd always dreamt of going to university.

- 3 I quit smoking, shed 15 kilos and took up running.

READING

- 1 Look at the photos and the title of the text. Answer the questions, then read the text quickly to check.
- 2 Why do you think the people in the photos are in the Guinness Book of Records?
- 3 Do you think the Guinness Book of Records accepts all types of records? Y / N

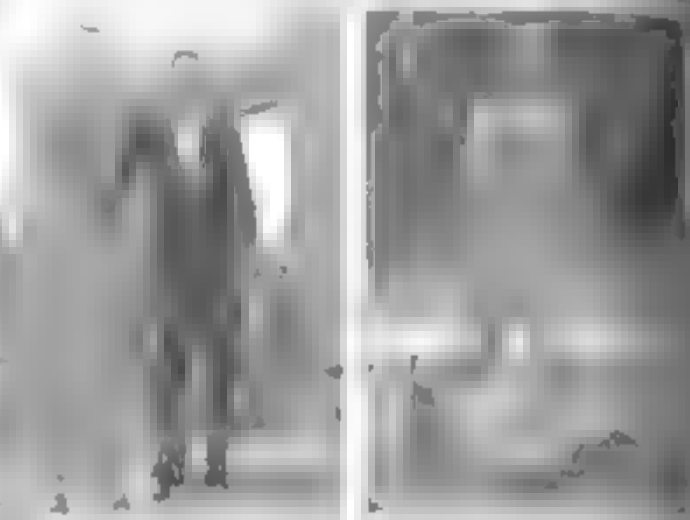
Guinness Book of Records

In 1951 Sir Hugh Beaver, the director of the Guinness Brewery, was on a hunting trip when an argument broke out over which was the fastest game bird in Europe. When Beaver realized there was no reference book to settle the argument and come up with the right answer, not only to that question, but also to similar trivial questions that frequently crop up in pub quizzes, the idea for the Guinness Book of Records was born.

The first collection of record-breaking achievements was compiled by the twin brothers Norris and Ross McWhirter, sports journalists with lots of knowledge of unusual records who had set up an agency to provide facts and figures to newspapers, encyclopedias, etc. It was published in 1955 in London and reached the top of the bestseller lists around Christmas, setting a trend of annual October updates to take advantage of the Christmas sales.

Current editions focus on human records in a wide range of activities. There are weightlifting competitors and people who throw eggs or play computer games for days on end. Besides, the book also records unique facts such as the most poisonous plant, the longest running TV series, the tallest person on earth (Sultan Kösen), the youngest person to have done something, etc.

Some records are unacceptable for ethical reasons or concerns about the wellbeing of the contestants, both human and animal. Therefore, eating or drinking contests involving fast food, alcoholic beverages or the consumption of harmful items like bicycles or pieces of metal are no longer included. Other records, such as those related to beauty claims are impossible to measure as they are entirely subjective.



Work out what kind of record you want to break. Ask yourself what talents you have, then visit the official website and find out what you want to do. You need to be patient as there are thousands of applicants every week. If they like your idea, send you the rules for establishing or breaking a record, it's the time to start practising. Once you're confident, ask two witnesses to record your performance. Send in all the evidence of your feat and eventually you'll get your certificate! If your record is remarkable enough, they'll put it in the book as well.

For Ashrita Furman, record-breaking is a way of life. He holds around 160 Guinness world records, including the one for the fastest mile on a kangaroo ball set on the Great Wall of China, and claims to use spirituality and meditation to achieve his.

With over 130 million sales, the Guinness Book of Records is the world's bestselling copyrighted book. It has been translated into more than 25 languages and has inspired numerous spin-off books, TV series and even museums.

GLOSSARY

game bird	bird that is hunted for sport or food
crop up	appear unexpectedly
well-being	general state of being healthy and happy
feat	action that requires a lot of effort, strength and/or courage
spin-off	something new that is created on the basis of an existing thing

VOCABULARY

Abstract nouns & adjectives

- 2 Read the text again and match the headings to paragraphs A–G. There are two extra headings you do not need to use.

A record breaker in its own right
A surprise hit
What's in it?
How it all came about
Record breaking tips
A famous achiever
A dream come true
How to get in
Will a fly record do?

- 3 Choose the correct answers.

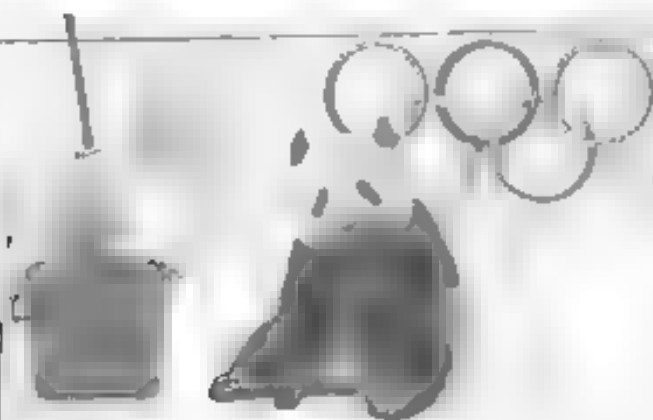
- Beaver wanted a book that
 - would be useful for hunters.
 - could help people win quizzes.
 - could solve people's doubts on a range of issues.
 - provided lots of data about sports.
- What happens to the *Guinness Book of Records* at Christmas time?
 - Many people buy it.
 - It is renewed.
 - It reaches number one on the list of bestsellers.
 - It is discounted in the sales.
- The content of the *Guinness Book of Records*
 - is a celebration of human triumphs.
 - is focused on feats of strength.
 - consists of a compilation of strange records.
 - is a mixture of unique achievements and facts.
- Records related to beauty
 - are unethical.
 - can be harmful.
 - are not always objective.
 - can't be verified.
- To get into the *Guinness Book of Records* you need to
 - establish or break a record.
 - apply via the internet.
 - set a record that is truly amazing.
 - have your performance recorded by witnesses.
- Ashrita Furman
 - has broken 160 records.
 - is a great athlete.
 - can jump very high.
 - uses interior strength to reach his goals.

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct forms (singular or plural) of the words in the box. There are two words which you do not need to use.

ailessness aspiration contentment determination
eagerness energy hope satisfaction

- He has succeeded in business by sheer _____ and hard work.
 - In my opinion, job _____ is far more important than a great salary.
 - My cousin's _____ has caused him to drift from job to job all his life.
 - After three days of searching, rescuers have given up a _____ of finding any more survivors.
 - Ever since he was a young man, he has had political _____.
 - After a troubled adolescence, she found _____ in her marriage.
- 5 What are the verb forms of the nouns in exercise 4?
- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1 | _____ |
| 2 | _____ |
| 3 | _____ |
| 4 | _____ |
- 6 Look back at Verb Zone in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 9.
- 7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
- The / scheduled / is / off / at / match / to / kick / 3 o'clock
 - He / go / but / rain / the / put / off / him / wanted / out / to
 - She / Pilates / improve / fitness / her / taken / 's / up / to
 - The / off / after / only / minutes / five / player / sent / was
 - If / want / suck / it / you / become / at / sport / you / to / have to / good / a / at

- 1 Complete the sentences in the quiz with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Then do the quiz and check your answers at the bottom of the page.



- 1 Facebook _____ (create) by Mark Zuckerberg in 2003 / 2005 / 2000
- 2 Since its worldwide introduction, Facebook _____ (ban) from several countries, including Syria, China, and South Korea / Iran / Venezuela
- 3 The map _____ (invent) by Spanish inventor Manuel Jaldón Coroninas in 1923 / 1936 / 1958.
- 4 In the near future, Spanish _____ (speak) by 38 / 28 / 15 million people in the USA alone
- 5 Tsunamis _____ usually caused by earthquakes but also by volcanic eruptions, landslides, rapid changes in atmospheric pressure or hurricanes, meteors, floods
- 6 By the end of December 1998, only 223 / 534 / 151 people _____ murder with guns in Canada, compared to 9 / 300 / in the USA
- 7 The character that _____ (show) in most horror films is Count Dracula / Frankenstein / Godzilla
- 8 The black and white fur of the Giant Panda _____ (say) to represent yin and yang / day and night / peace and prosperity
- 9 The tennis Grand Slam _____ (make up) of four tournaments: the US Open, the Australian Open, the French Open and Wimbledon / the Darts Cup / the China Open
- 10 The 2024 Winter Olympics _____ (hold) in Beijing, Oslo or Almaty / Edinburgh / Vancouver

- 2 Rewrite the conversations in reported speech.

1 Adam: What did you think of the film?
Bill: It was OK, but I'd seen it before

2 Amy: How long have you been studying in Oxford?
Bea: I've been here for two years

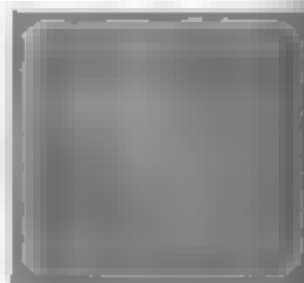
3 Adam: When will you get the results?
Brendan: I think I'll get them on Monday

4 Andrew: I really must go—I'm in a hurry
Barbara: I can give you a lift

- 3 Read about the mystery and the two explanations. Write P (Plausible) or I (Implausible) after each explanation.

Nazca lines

When archaeologists discovered hundreds of pictures of animals and humans drawn in the sands of the Nazca desert in Peru, they were at a loss about how and why they had been made.



- Some investigators are convinced they must be the work of extraterrestrials because they couldn't have been created without somebody directing the work from above
- Some investigators believe that the lines may have been drawn to show where the sun and other celestial bodies rose

- 4 Write two additional explanations for the Nazca lines, using modal perfects

1 _____

2 _____

EXTRA CHALLENGE

Match the facts to categories A–F.

- 1 The average heart beats 100,000 times a day.
- 2 Persia changed its name to Iran in 1935.
- 3 It is estimated that about 350 million people suffer from Facebook addiction disorder.
- 4 A giraffe cleans its ears with its own tongue.
- 5 The pink daffodil appeared for the first time in the novel, *A Study in Scarlet* (1887).
- 6 Some people use patches on their arms to fight their addiction to smoking.

- A history
- B art and literature
- C society and culture
- D science and technology
- E the human body
- F the natural world



Now write questions to obtain the information in the underlined part of sentences 1–6. Try to use a different question word each time.

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

- 1 Which football team did Usain Bolt want to play for when he was a young boy?

- 2 What is the name of the footballer who is a member of the England national football team?

- 3 Basketball is one of the world's most popular sports. What is the name of the sport that is a combination of basketball and soccer?

- 4 What is the name of the sport that can be played in the snow?

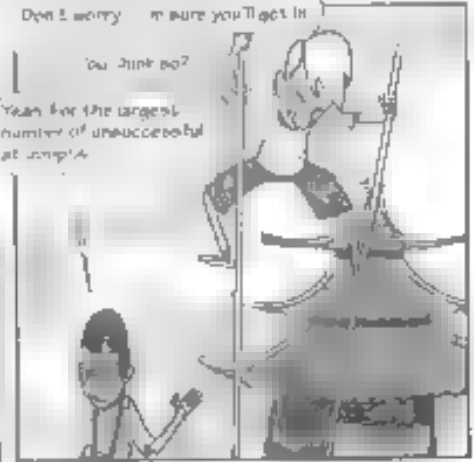
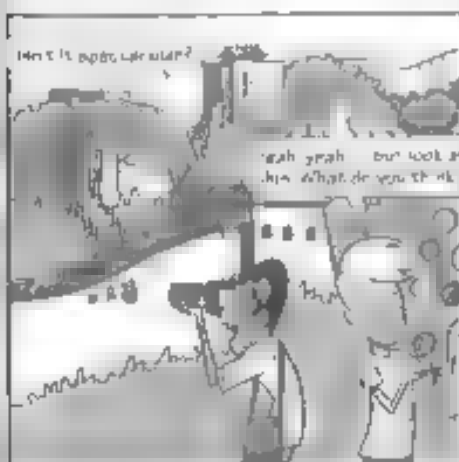
- 5 What is the name of the sport that is played in the sport of darts?

- 6 What is the name of the sport that is played in the sport of darts?



GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. What does Greg really think of Gary's attempts to get into the Guinness Book of Records?



INTERACTION

Catching up

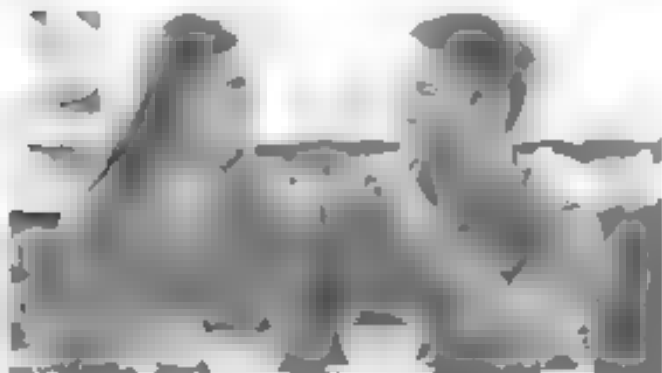
- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say ...

- when you want to meet someone again soon?
- when you want to express that someone has changed a lot?
- when you want to ask how someone has been?

- 2  Complete the conversation between Lexi and Marius, two friends who meet again after ten years, with words and expressions in the box. Listen and check.

keep as fit as a fiddle complain as long as landed on Good Can you believe sounds pretty bet must have been catch up Neither have deny get together



Lexi: Marius. Great to see you again!
 _____ it's been ten years?
 Marius: No way! Has it really been _____ that? You haven't changed a bit.
 Lexi: _____ you. You're still in great shape.
 Marius: I have to be. I work as a personal trainer.
 Lexi: That's _____ interesting. You've always liked doing sports. So, who are your clients?
 Marius: get all sorts, but quite a few are famous – you know, actors, models and so on.
 Lexi: That sounds fantastic.
 _____ the pay isn't bad either.
 Marius: I can't _____ I've set up my own agency, and now I mostly work from home. I've got my own gym, pool, a small office

Lexi: Wow – you really _____ your feet.
 Marius: Anyway, enough about me. What about you? What have you been _____ to?
 Lexi: Well, you know _____ always wanted to be an actress. And I did get into drama school.
 Marius: _____ for you!
 Lexi: But then my mum got seriously ill and I had to give it up. I went home to look after her.
 Marius: That's _____ really hard.
 Lexi: It was. About five years ago, my mum passed away.
 Marius: I'm so sorry. It sounds _____ you've had a

_____ tough time.
 Lexi: Yes, things have been difficult – I can't _____ it. But then, two years ago, I went to an audition for a part in a TV series and they took me on. I've never looked back since.

Marius: We still have so much to _____ on. We must _____ in touch.
 Lexi: Yes – let's _____ again soon.

- 3 Find words and expressions in the conversation that mean.

- to hire or employ someone
- hard, difficult
- to die
- start your own company
- very fit
- We're done

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 4  Revise the Express yourself box on page 100 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.



Idioms

1 Match the sport-related idioms to the definitions.

put no punches blow the whistle (on someone)
score an own goal take sides

- 1 _____ Refers to a situation in which you do something to try and obtain an advantage but actually make it worse for yourself
- 2 _____ Waste no time in doing something
- 3 _____ Inform the authorities about a bad or illegal action so that something can be done about it
- 4 _____ Support one person against another in an argument

2 Read the article and complete the gaps with suitable idioms from exercise 1, using the correct forms.

Last Sunday, crowds lined out for the women's amateur football final. Both the competing teams had enjoyed a strong season and each was confident their side would take the trophy home.

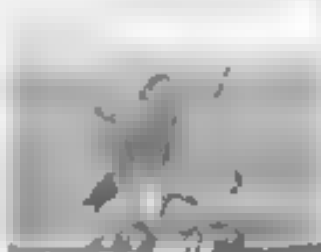
The atmosphere was electric, but it wasn't until the second half that City scored the first goal. The crowd went wild. No more than two minutes later, United equalized. The spectacle was truly amazing: supporters were screaming, the coaches were shouting instructions and the players redoubled their efforts.

The score stayed the same until about a minute before full time. In a desperate attempt to block a shot from City, two United defenders collided, scoring

The players went crazy and _____ in hurling abuse at each other. Soon, other players were joining in as well. The United captain tried to intervene, but was accused by both girls of _____.

Spectators then charged onto the pitch and, in the middle of the chaos, the referee decided to _____ on it all.

The shocked referee later told reporters that he'd stopped the match because he was concerned about the players' safety. He added he'd never seen anything like it in his entire career!



3 Choose the best title for the article

- 1 Football match ends badly
- 2 Pandemonium on the pitch
- 3 More violence in women's football

4 Rewrite the final paragraph of the article in direct speech.

The shocked referee said:

5 Read the Writing Reference on page 121. You have been asked to write an article for your local newspaper about a sports event you attended during which an incident happened, either real or invented. Follow the instructions.

- 1 Use the article on this page as a model
- 2 Give your article an attractive title
- 3 Divide your work into clear paragraphs, using this plan:
Paragraph 1 – introduce the event
Paragraphs 2 and 3 – describe what you saw and how the event developed
Paragraph 4 – explain how it ended

Reminder

- Try to include some sport-related idioms
- Include some comment(s) from participants in direct speech

VOCABULARY

1 Match words 1-10 to definitions A-J.

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 1 reboot | A say you are sorry |
| 2 ecologist | B extremely small |
| 3 ban | C ask yourself |
| 4 research | D enthusiastic |
| 5 go haywire | E person who applies the rules in a tennis match |
| 6 apologize | F start your computer up again |
| 7 wonder | G person who conserves the environment |
| 8 minute | H investigation |
| 9 umpire | I prohibit |
| 10 eager | J stop working correctly |

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box

danger destruction die energy
explanation survive threat

- My son is extremely _____, he's always running around doing things and he never gets tired
- Hundreds of _____ species may have become extinct by the end of this century
- Thousands of fans around the world expressed their sadness at the _____ of their idol
- The _____ of the Chilean miners who had been trapped underground for 69 days was nothing less than a miracle
- Forest fires _____ thousands of hectares of _____ and every summer

3 Match 1-8 with A-H to make complete sentences.

- I woke up in a cold sweat
 - Showing a plane flying over in the film *Troy*
 - My brother is over the moon
 - My uncle is trying to cut down on sugar
 - "I forgot your names one more time"
 - We need to be much more innovative
 - I really think you are punching above your weight
 - After more than 40 years at the head of the company,
- A my grandfather decided to pass the baton to my father
B if we want to catch up with our competitors
C was such a blooper
D because my parents are going to give him their old car
E because I dreamed that I'd forgotten to go to an exam
F you are not experienced enough for such a responsible job
G because he wants to lose weight
H "you're out" the director shouted

GRAMMAR

4 Change the active sentences into passive sentences, and the passive sentences into active sentences. Include the agent if necessary.

- Farmers in the UK are hunting badgers.
Badgers _____
- Poachers have killed many protected animals.
Many protected animals _____
- Do they produce a lot of cars in Germany?
A lot _____
- The judge may sentence the criminal to life in prison.
The criminal _____
- The authorities say that thousands of fish have been killed.
Thousands of fish _____
- Are wolves attacking a lot of sheep?
Are a lot of sheep _____

5 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in bold and a 2-3 other words.

- My brother said he hadn't used my mobile phone. **denied**
My brother _____ my mobile phone
- You should take more tablets every day. **advised**
He told me _____ tablets every day
- Can you give me a lift to the airport tomorrow? **following**
He offered to give me a lift to the airport
- Stop biting your nails. **told**
My mother _____ biting my nails
- Why don't we order a take-away? **suggested**
My sister _____ a take-away

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- If I _____ (not take) my mobile to the swimming pool, nobody _____ (can steal) it
- Someone _____ (hack) into my bank account. By the time I _____ (find out), they _____ (already steal) 3,000 Euros
- The neighbours _____ (must go) on holiday as the blinds are down and they _____ (not collect) the mail for days
- If we _____ (leave) a little earlier we _____ (avoid) the rush hour
- We _____ (lie) on the beach sunbathing when someone _____ (grab) our bag

REVIEW CHECK

- 7 Complete the text with the correct words (A, B, C or D).

The most famous whale in the world

1 In 1970s Keiko, a young whale, of a whale
2 that was caught in a net in the sea.
3 He was taken to a place in Norway where he
4 was kept for a while. He was then taken to a Mexican
5 where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
6 where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
7 where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
8 where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
9 where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
10 where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a



11 In 1994, the Free Willy Foundation was formed with donations
12 from the studio and many private contributors. In 1997, the
13 Keiko (3,500 kg) was flown to a specially
14 built pool in Oregon where he lived for
15 years. He was then taken to a
16 where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
17 where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
18 where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
19 where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
20 where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

1994, the Free Willy Foundation was formed with donations
from the studio and many private contributors. In 1997, the
Keiko (3,500 kg) was flown to a specially

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a

built pool in Oregon where he lived for
years. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a
where he lived for a while. He was then taken to a



Video

Australian wildlife



BEFORE YOU WATCH

- 1 Read the introduction and the questions in NOW WATCH.



Australia has a range of unusual animals that can be seen nowhere else on earth.

(NOW WATCH)

- 2 Answer the questions.

- What reason is given for the uniqueness of Australian wildlife?
- What is a marsupial?
- What is a monotreme?
- What dangerous animals are mentioned?
- What introduced species did you see in the video?

- 3 Match words and phrases 1-5 from the video with definitions A-E.

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| 1 endemic | A animals that feed their young with their own milk |
| 2 get around | B the pocket of skin where marsupials carry their young |
| 3 pouch | C to move from one place to another |
| 4 mammal | D poison produced by some animals |
| 5 venomous | E only existing in a specific location |

FOLLOW UP

- 4 Go online and find out about Australian wildlife. Write an interesting fact to share with your class.

And you know that...

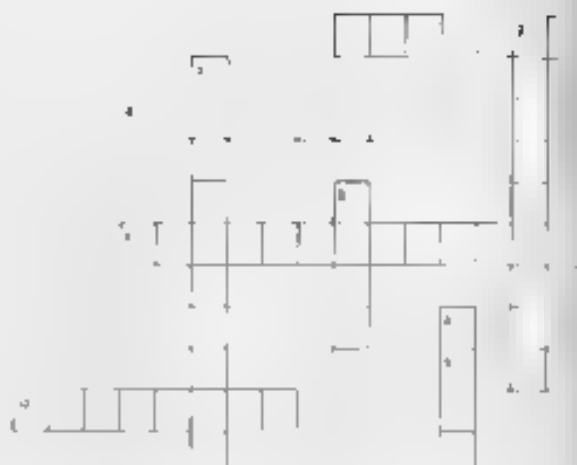
CROSSWORD

Across

- 1 An _____ is a song that gets stuck in your head and you can't get rid of it (7)
- 4 Interviewers often ask about candidates' _____ and weaknesses (9)
- 6 When I fell off my bike, my head hit the ground and I lost for a few seconds (13)
- 7 It's a really uplifting movie and definitely _____ watching (5)
- 9 You should go _____ your answers before handing in the exam (4)
- 10 I still haven't finished my essay and the _____ is tomorrow (8)

Down

- 2 Cockroaches are really _____ animals (9)
- 3 _____ (two words) is a problem in many developing countries because qualified people prefer to emigrate and look for better-paid jobs elsewhere (10)
- 8 Eating a lot of fruit and vegetables will _____ your immune system (5)
- 11 Oh dear! I shouldn't have said that. I think _____ put my _____ in it! (4)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article about brain power
- ☐ I can understand an interview with a neuroscientist about the relationship between music and the brain

Vocabulary

- ☐ I can use expressions and two-part nouns to talk about the brain
- ☐ I can form and use collocations with make and do
- ☐ I can form adjectives ending in -ed, -ing, -ful and -ive from verbs

Grammar

- ☐ I can use modal verbs
- ☐ I can use gerunds and infinitives

Listening

- ☐ I can understand a radio interview about what makes a good language learner

Interaction

- ☐ I can understand a college interview
- ☐ I can successfully take part in an interview
- ☐ I can show polite interest, keep a conversation going and express agreement

Challenge

- ☐ I can learn and teach a memory-training technique

Writing

- ☐ I can make formal recommendations
- ☐ I can write a report

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 You don't have to shout! The baby is sleeping
- 2 I stopped to watch TV because the programmes are so boring
- 3 I find interviews really stressing
- 4 My French isn't brilliant, but it's enough to get across
- 5 I made my best, but I still failed the exam
- 6 We look forward to see you next week
- 7 If you don't know the word, you can look for it in the dictionary
- 8 We haven't to change trains, it's a direct line

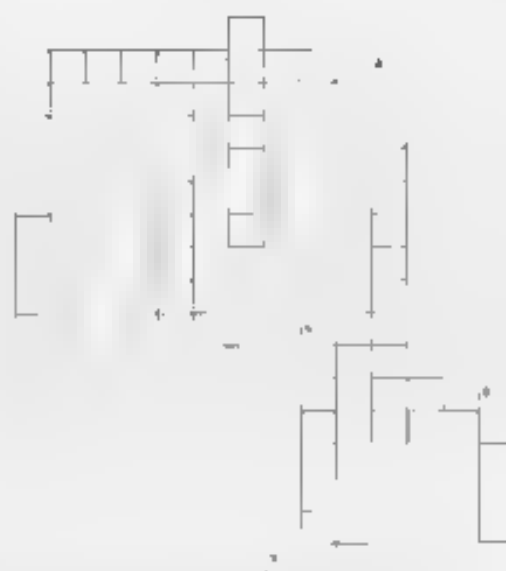
CROSSWORD

Across

- 2 Finishing the marathon has been my greatest **achievement** so far.
 5 What will you do if you **graduate** out of university? You'll never find a job! (4)
 6 The ship set **sail** on its first voyage in 2010. (3)
 7 The school organized a concert to **raise** money for a local charity. (5)
 9 **When** you were scared when you saw the tarantula! (3)

Down

- 1 Large parts of the route were flooded, which was a major **obstacle** to the expedition. (7)
 2 The food was absolutely **awful**; I couldn't eat a thing. (5)
 3 He **complained** with his boss that his computer was slow. (9)
 4 The plane was shaken violently **when** it was taking off. (4)
 6 Have you ever **overcome** a fear or phobia? (8)
 8 He was **stung** by a scorpion, which was hiding in his boot. (5)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article about a young woman who sailed solo around the world.
☐ I can understand an article about a man who swam the length of the Amazon.

Vocabulary

- ☐ I can talk about travel and adventure.
☐ I can create abstract nouns from adjectives and verbs.

Grammar

- ☐ I can use the past simple, past continuous, past perfect and past perfect continuous.
☐ I can use structures like *even though*, *although*, *in spite of* and *despite* to describe contrasting situations.
☐ I can use a range of past tenses to tell a story.

Listening

- ☐ I can understand an interview with a girl who survived a plane crash.

Interaction

- ☐ I can understand a discussion about going on a potentially dangerous expedition.
☐ I can argue for and against an extreme proposition.

Challenge

- ☐ I can role play a radio or TV interview with an adventurer.

Writing

- ☐ I can use modifiers.
☐ I can write a film review.

ERROR CORRECTION

- The special effects were very amazing.
- Even though she was tired after the accident, she never gave up.
- He had walked for hours when he twisted his ankle.
- The explorers had to cope many extreme weather conditions.
- The width of the river is about two kilometres.
- She never went to Peru before she joined the expedition.
- He completed the entire journey by his own.
- Even though driving carefully, he nearly crashed the car.

Review Unit 3

CROSSWORD

Across

- 3 In many countries, the number of poor or people has gone up due to the economic crisis. (13)
 8 How could you do such a stupid thing? What on were you thinking? (5)
 6 We built a to separate our garden from the neighbours' (5)
 7 Although the UK is ruled by a queen, it is called a ... (7)
 9 The two countries signed a peace to put an end to two years of war (6)

Down

- 1 Last night, government forces finally managed to the dictator who had taken control of the country six months before (9)
 2 Nelson Mandela tirelessly against apartheid until it was abolished (10)
 4 Many NGOs are trying to raise of the problem of the increasing numbers of refugees in the world (9)
 8 After the devastating hurricane, epidemics broke in several parts of the country (3)
 10 Last night, a peaceful protest in the city centre turned into a when protesters started burning containers. (4)



I CAN

Reading

- ☐ can understand an article about the political changes that took place in Central and Eastern Europe in the 1980s
☐ can understand an article about a Hungarian village which was divided by a new border

Vocabulary

- ☐ can talk about countries and politics
☐ can form people words ending in -er, -or, -ant/-ent, -ee, -ist and -ian

Grammar

- ☐ can use the present perfect simple and the present perfect continuous
☐ can use relative clauses to identify which thing or person I'm referring to

Listening

- ☐ can understand a discussion about national icons

Interaction

- ☐ can understand a discussion between students who have to decide which place to visit
☐ can talk about the positive and negative aspects of a plan, ask for other people's opinion and make a decision

Challenge

- ☐ can plan and conduct a guided tour

Writing

- ☐ I can use some expressions for giving additional information
☐ I can write a profile

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 My son has a lot of trouble to do his math homework
 2 In my country we don't have a democratic regime for
 3 That restaurant is owned by a famous cooker
 4 I missed the bus, that meant I arrived late for the exam
 5 Violence has broken out in the capital, people have taken
 6 I've got three sisters, all of who are teachers
 7 Ours is a medium-sized company; we have about 35
 8 My uncle was a well-known human rights lawyer, but
 he is died now.

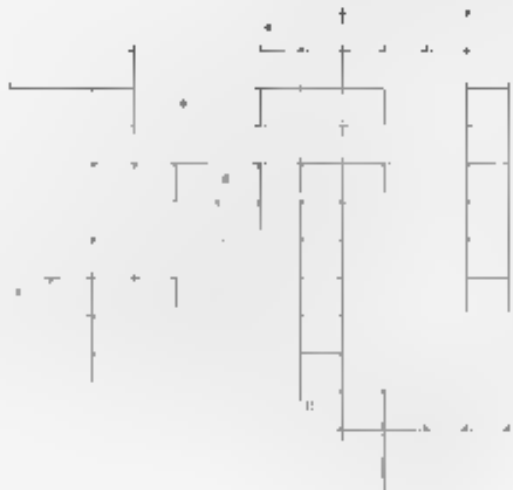
CROSSWORD

Across

- 4 People who drop in the street should be punished (6)
- 5 Governments can use a range of electronic devices to on citizens (3)
- 6 In the future biometric passports will be impossible to (5)
- 7 As soon as the robber stepped into the bank, he was on camera (8)
- 9 Security cameras are everywhere we'll just have to put up them (4)
- 10 Chips are tiny devices on which you can lots of data (5)

Down

- 1 The installation of security cameras after the terrorist attacks (11)
- 2 can be used to identify people (12)
- 3 It took us ten hours on a hot, crowded bus to get there. In short, it was a journey (9)
- 4 In the future it will be possible to people's movements because of the clothes they are wearing (5)
- 11 In most countries, owners have to their pets for easy identification (3)



CAN

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article with arguments for and against surveillance
- ☐ I can understand a text about futuristic technology and the ways it is used in the film *Minority Report*

Vocabulary

an unknown surveillance

- ☐ I can use collective and partitive nouns.

Grammar

- ☐ I can use *will* for predictions, spontaneous decisions, offers, promises and requests
- ☐ I can use conjunctions to link sentences in the future
- ☐ I can use the future continuous and the future perfect

Listening

- ☐ I can understand a conversation between a police officer and a tourist about a theft

Interaction

- ☐ I can understand descriptions of people and places.
- ☐ I can describe people and places using a range of expressions for speculating

Challenge

- ☐ I can argue in favour of and against a statement.
- ☐ I can express agreement, disagreement and ask for clarification

Writing

- ☐ I can give arguments and counter arguments to discuss a statement
- ☐ I can write an opinion essay

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 If they improve security at airports, terrorist attacks will soar
- 2 I can find my car just anywhere in going to my mind
- 3 That I can't thank you for it. It was lovely to hear about you
- 4 Their plane arrived early in the morning, so they'll probably be in the heart now
- 5 Help, help! Someone has theft my bag
- 6 I can't have any more bread or bread in still hungry
- 7 I can't see next week. I have to find my exams
- 8 I think I have my own company before in US

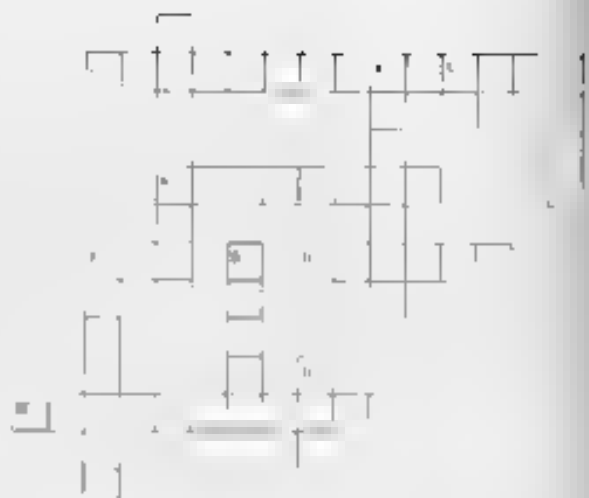
CROSSWORD

Across

- 3 People who have lost part of their face in an accident may benefit from surgery. (14)
 6 He cut his hand badly and had to have five to close the wound. (3)
 7 I hate it when football fans at the players after a disappointing match. (4)
 10 You should think carefully before having a tattoo because you might it later. (6)
 12 I couldn't believe how well she looked after the treatment, it was absolutely (two words). (3/8)

Down

- 1 Surgeons use , scalpels and other instruments to operate. (8)
 2 At first he couldn't understand why everybody was staring at him, but then the dropped: he was wearing his pyjamas! (5)
 4 If his leg doesn't heal soon, he may have to an operation. (7)
 5 The ugly duckling had to face up the fact that he looked different from the others. (3)
 8 Stories can be an effective way to people and make them feel better about themselves. (7)
 9 The part of your head where hair grows is called the. (5)
 11 Children who don't in with the others are often bullied. (2)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article about a man who has had a face transplant.
☐ I can understand a fairy tale.

Vocabulary

- ☐ can talk about medicine and surgery
☐ can use expressions with get

Grammar

- ☐ can use the second conditional to talk about imaginary or unlikely situations
☐ I can use the third conditional to talk about hypothetical situations in the past.
☐ I can use 'wish' and 'if only' to express regret.
☐ I can use third conditional inversion in formal styles.

Listening

- ☐ I can understand people talking about their tattoos.
☐ I can understand an interview about the history of tattooing.

Interaction

- ☐ can take part in a debate giving arguments for and against having a tattoo
☐ I can understand a family disagreement.
☐ I can resolve a family conflict.

Challenge

- ☐ I can retell a traditional story in a new way.

Writing

- ☐ I can use tentative language.
☐ I can write a for and against essay.

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 I couldn't have cosmetic surgery if I thought it was not a sin.
 2 He wouldn't have his big feet.
 3 The prince and the princess got married and they live happily ever after.
 4 I wish I could make my room better, I thought I would make my room better.
 5 I wish I could wear the most outrageous clothes and my shoes standing up as a reward.
 6 If I had born in a different century, I wouldn't have lived in a flat.
 7 I wish I could waste a lot of time so now I really want to make over for it and study hard.
 8 I still think that politician will win the election, he anyway has something in his arm.

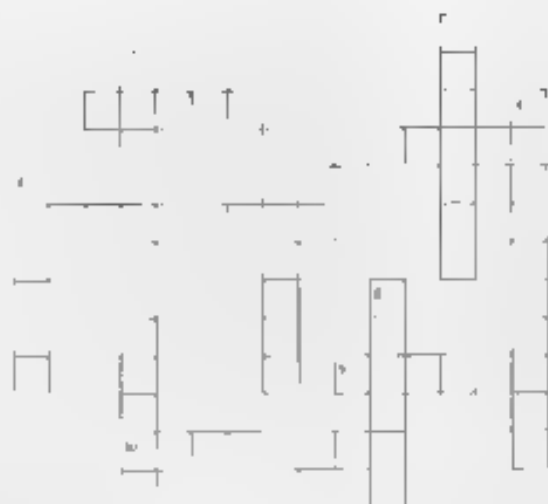
CROSSWORD

Across

- 3 explained to the telephone company that I hadn't made those calls and I managed to convince them to my bill. (5)
- 8 Peter is such a ... He's always talking on his mobile, even when he's with friends. (8)
- 11 At first, my parents didn't want to buy me a smart phone, but in the end they ... agreed. (11)
- 9 Could I speak to Sue, please? ... on, I'll put you through. (4)
- 10 We were able to ... some of the data after our computer crashed. (8)

Down

- 1 She was completely ... when she won the lottery. (7)
- 2 At least a hundred ... (two words) got into the concert for free by climbing over the fences. (4) (8)
- 4 Internet scammers can be extremely ... so be very careful when they ask you for confidential information online. (10)
- 5 My ... provider doesn't charge me for local calls. (7)
- 6 When interrogated by the police, he ... any involvement in the hacking incident. (6)
- 8 The man who tried to sell us the insurance spoke with a ... American ... (10)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article about a woman whose mobile phone was stolen
- ☐ I can understand a text about people who became victims of internet fraud

Vocabulary

- ☐ I can talk about internet connection problems
- ☐ I can form adjectives from nouns ending in -y

Grammar

- ☐ I can use *could* to ask for permission, make requests and talk about ability and possibility
- ☐ I can use *be able to* as an alternative form of *can / could* with certain tenses and structures, or with other modal verbs
- ☐ I can use modal perfects to speculate about the past

Listening

- ☐ I can understand a story about a boy who invited two thousand people to his birthday party

Interaction

- ☐ I can understand people complaining about the cost of using their mobile phones
- ☐ I can make a complaint and deal with one

Challenge

- ☐ I can create a TV advert

Writing

- ☐ I can use expressions for contrasting and opposing ideas
- ☐ I can write an article for an online magazine

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 He could get a refund when his laptop broke down after just one week.
- 2 I can't believe you were taken back by that scam. It was so obvious that it was all a lie.
- 3 She mustn't have gone home; her car is still parked outside the office.
- 4 I remember can be due to ... into much whatever am
- 5 You should answer all the questions in the exam and then you would have passed
- 6 Don't you hate people who talk very loud on their mobile phones in public places?
- 7 Excuse me; I'd like to make a claim about the service. It was very slow and when the food arrived everything was cold
- 8 I know ... shouldn't have given them my password, but there's no use crying over spilt wine

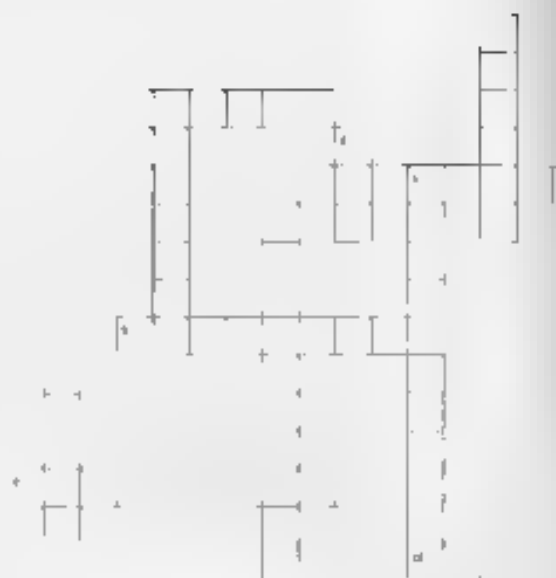
CROSSWORD

Across

- 2 Millions of _____ are killed every year for their fins, which are made into soup. (6)
- 5 _____ are small rodents with bushy tails who normally live in trees. They can be found in many city parks. (9)
- 8 _____ are flat, triangular fish who have a poisonous barb at the end of their tail. (9)
- 9 WWF is one of many organizations dedicated to the protection of _____ animals. (10)
- 10 The Pyrenean ibex _____ out in the year 2000. (4)

Down

- 1 Although the trade in exotic animals has been restricted or _____ in many countries, lots of animals are still bought and sold illegally. (6)
- 3 Many species are becoming extinct due to deforestation and other forms of _____ destruction. (7)
- 4 Leopards have been hunted for many years for their valuable _____. (3)
- 6 Thousands of baby seals are _____ every year for their skins. (11)
- 7 We _____ the printer after it had been repaired. (11)
- 7 The way some people mistreat their pets makes me feel ill, it's absolutely _____. (9)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article about endangered animals
- ☐ I can understand an article about a famous naturalist

Vocabulary

- ☐ I can talk about wildlife conservation
- ☐ I can distinguish between identical verbs and nouns and use them correctly.

Grammar

- ☐ I can use present, past, future and modal passives.
- ☐ I can use advanced passive structures.

Listening

- ☐ I can understand a discussion about the fur trade

Interaction

- ☐ I can understand campaigners trying to get people's attention and telling them about a local development.
- ☐ I can get people's attention and campaign for a cause

Challenge

- ☐ I can prepare and give a presentation

Writing

- ☐ I can use a range of expressions to talk about possible situations.
- ☐ I can write an informal email to a friend giving them advice

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 A conservator is a person who works to protect animals, plants and natural resources.
- 2 Unless action has been taken, many animal species will become extinct in the near future.
- 3 The African elephant population is the twentieth century.
- 4 I would never pay that much for a t-shirt. I think it's a complete rip-off.
- 5 She is believed to be a model when she was younger.
- 6 Thousands of whales are still killing by whalers in countries like Japan, Iceland and Norway.
- 7 It isn't a good idea to make an important decision in the spur of the moment.
- 8 It says that breaking a mirror brings bad luck.

CROSSWORD

Across

- 1 I didn't like the movie that much, but the is brilliant. I listen to it all the time. (10)
 3 Some actors become unbearable when they reach. I guess being famous isn't as easy as it seems. (7)
 4 My brother the thought of appearing in an action movie. It's what he's always dreamt of. (8)
 9 The Titanic after the ship hit an iceberg. (4)
 10 After the power cut, all the lights and the sound system went. None of the actors knew what to do. (7)
 11 I'm coming to the party. don't want to out on all the fun! (4)

Down

- 1 Whatever film he's making, this director always gives a part to his favourite actor, even if he only appears for a few minutes. (5)
 4 The rock star for destroying the hotel. (10)
 6 I don't share my sister's for sitcoms. She loves them, but I think they're quite predictable and boring. (10)
 8 I think he's an absolutely brilliant director. His films are so modern, he's way of his time! (5)
 10 I a lot whenever I do exercise, so always have to bring a change of clothes to the gym. (5)



I CAN...

Reading

- 1 I can understand an article about actors and film directors who often work together.

Vocabulary

- 1 I can use idioms to describe people's emotions.
 2 I can use alternative verbs to say and tell.

Grammar

- 1 I can use reported speech with time and location expressions.
 2 I can use alternative reporting structures.

Listening

- 1 I can understand short extracts from films.

Interaction

- 1 I can understand dialogues in which friends reach a consensus.
 2 I can plan a night out and reach a common consensus.

Challenge

- 1 I can plan a film and act out a scene.

Writing

- 1 I can use words and expressions for giving reasons.
 2 I can write a story.

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 She blushed to the tips of her hair when the teacher complimented her on her work.
- 2 He said it had been very cold yesterday.
- 3 When questioned by the teacher, the student refused that he had copied in the exam.
- 4 My friend had told me it was a brilliant movie but I didn't really live on to my expectations.
- 5 She asked where was the nearest cinema.
- 6 He offered lending me the DVD, so I could watch the film again at home.
- 7 'Let's go and watch a movie!' 'No, I can't bother, I'd rather stay at home.'
- 8 My brother blamed me to crash the computer.

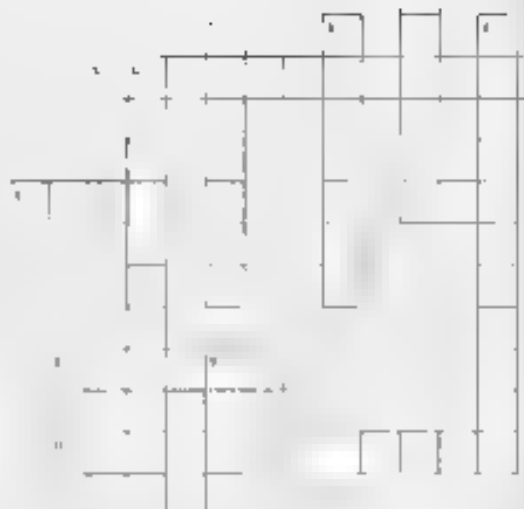
CROSSWORD

Across

- 5 ... develop storylines for films and TV series (13)
 8 Breaking the world record is a truly amazing (4)
 7 Many British athletes achieved Olympic at the London 2012 Games (5)
 11 That's not what we agreed on! You can't just move the in the middle of the project (9)
 10 He had wanted to become a jockey, but a bad fall him off (3)
 11 The man who sits on a high chair and controls a tennis match is called the (6)

Down

- 1 The forward scored an .. goal in the last minute of the final (4)
 2 don't believe a man can run faster than a horse. Are you me? (7)
 3 The soldier was a medal for bravery (7)
 4 The coach praised the of his team and said they had played some of their best football (11)
 9 A is a flat rubber disk that is used as a ball in ice hockey (4)
 12 The game show are really brave. I wouldn't want to spend weeks in the jungle (11)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article about Jamaican sprinters.
☐ I can understand a text about three young people's ambitions in life.

Vocabulary

- ☐ I can describe people associated with sport.
☐ I can use abstract nouns and the adjectives related with them.

Grammar

- ☐ I can use narrative tenses, the present perfect and conditionals.
☐ I can use reported speech, passives and modal perfects.

Listening

- ☐ I can understand people talking about different sports.

Interaction

- ☐ I can understand former classmates catching up at a school reunion.
☐ I can meet up with old friends and catch up with what everybody has been doing.

Challenge

- ☐ I can write and present a TV quiz show.

Writing

- ☐ I can use sport-related idioms.
☐ I can write a newspaper article.

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 I take over my dad; both of us love sport.
 2 My team never won an important tournament until we beat the defending champion.
 3 My brother is a really energetic child, he needs to be doing things all the time.
 4 This is the third time I visit Paris, so I know the city well.
 5 The defender was sent out for insulting the referee.
 6 If I didn't have a season ticket, I wouldn't be able to attend watching all the matches.
 7 Lucy apologized that she was late.
 8 They mustn't have lost the match! The supporters all look really happy.

A report

In paragraph 1, explain what the objective of your report is.

In subsequent paragraphs write information, e.g. explanation of why the objectives should be met, paragraph by paragraph.

In paragraph 2, write down the objectives of the report.

In the final paragraph, write down your conclusions and recommendations. We make the recommendations. We think it should be done in this way.

In a report, you should always explain your objectives, suggestions and recommendations in a clear and powerful way.

Class report on ways to improve language learning

provide

classroom to practise and improve their English. The report

reported,

that they often visit student said that he occasionally reads out loud and records

However, classroom, apart from homework. It was a shock to realize that we only ever speak English inside the classroom, so this is something we would like to change.

would

that our English teachers support us in this way.

In a report, you should explain what the objective of your report is.

Remember to write a way of providing information in a clear and powerful sentence into the past. In this case, the students continue visiting the speaking websites in the present.

Remember to write a way of providing information in a clear and powerful sentence into the past.

Remember to write a way of providing information in a clear and powerful sentence into the past.

Remember to write a way of providing information in a clear and powerful sentence into the past.

In English there are different ways of expressing purpose. To answer the question why we did something, we can use to + infinitive or for + noun, e.g.

to buy some fruit

for buying some fruit

for buying some fruit

NOT for buying

In formal writing we can put in order to, or so as to in front of the infinitive, especially with state verbs, e.g.

I changed jobs (in order / so as) to be close to my family.

To talk about the purpose of an object or an action we normally use for + ing. These sentences answer the question what is it used for? e.g.

However, if the subject of the sentence is a person we can also use to + infinitive, e.g.

A review

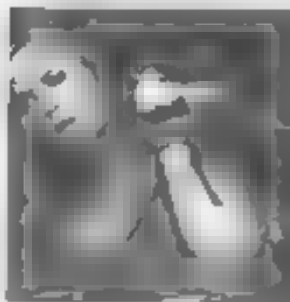
In the first paragraph, introduce the film you are going to review. You can also include some background information such as the title of the film, the director and the stars.

In subsequent paragraphs, write about the things you liked and didn't like about the film.

Modify the quality of the meaning of the following adjective.

Use the following adjectives to describe the film.

Miracoli Accadono Ancora (Miracles Still Happen)



What is the film about?

It is a story about a young girl who

actually survives a plane crash

the story of a young girl fighting to stay alive in

the aftermath of a plane crash

actually survive a plane crash. The story of a young girl fighting to stay alive in the aftermath of a plane crash.

But in spite of such promising material, the film was

ridiculous and the plane crash was, quite frankly, a joke. It was like something out of Thunderbirds! As for the music, it was completely inappropriate for the mood of the film.

Quite

And then - after all that - the film ended suddenly. There

happened afterwards but it was not very good.

Susan Penhaligon is a superb actor and she gave a great performance as Julianne.

William from Weymouth, UK

It was the best of the best.

It was a few important things that made it so good. Just tell the plot.

Use modifiers in front of adjectives to make them stronger or less strong. For example, 'very good' is stronger than 'good'.

In a review, you should give your personal opinion about the film. You can use adjectives to describe the film and adverbs to modify them.

Adjectives can be divided into gradable and ungradable adjectives. Gradable adjectives can be used in the comparative and superlative form, e.g.

very good, better, best, worse, worst

Ungradable adjectives are also called extreme adjectives because of their strong meaning, which already includes the idea of very.

Extreme adjectives can be used in the comparative and superlative form, e.g.

We need to use different modifiers with gradable and extreme adjectives. Extreme adjectives also need extreme adverbs to modify them. Compare

very good AND better, best
AND worse, worst

A profile

The first paragraph introduces the person briefly, says what's special about them.

The second paragraph gives more information about the person's life, achievements, etc. It often includes a list of awards or honours.

The third paragraph is about the person's death, if they have died. It often includes a list of awards or honours.

The final paragraph is a summary of the person's life, achievements, etc. It often includes a list of awards or honours.

Eleanor Roosevelt

The 20th century person I admire the most is Eleanor Roosevelt because she was such an extraordinary woman for her time and did so much for people who were poor or disadvantaged.

In 1905, Eleanor married Franklin D. Roosevelt when he became President of the United States in 1933 she became the First Lady. Franklin was in a wheelchair which meant that Eleanor took over many of his duties.

Not only was Eleanor the longest serving First Lady of the United States (from 1933 to 1945) but she was also the most controversial and outspoken one. She campaigned tirelessly for racial equality, women's rights, housing reform and child welfare, writing a daily newspaper column as well as travelling all over the land to hold press conferences and give lectures.

In 1947, two years after Franklin's death, Eleanor became the first chairman of the Commission on Human Rights and helped to draft the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, which is still in force today.

She died in 1962 having received thirty five honorary degrees from different universities. At the time of her death, UN Ambassador Acheson Stevenson said: 'The United States, the United Nations, the world, has lost one of its great citizens. She would rather light a candle than curse the darkness, and her glow has warmed the world.'



You can use information to describe something that happened and describe a person's life.

Information. Remember to use verb-subject inversion when you start a sentence with this only.

Use a person's name and information.

Use a person's name and information. It's short for after she had received.

We use so before adjectives, adverbs and quantifiers, e.g.

I have so much homework that I don't know where to begin.

We use such or such a(n) before a noun phrase, e.g.

Such naughty behaviour will not be tolerated!

My father is such an admirable man.

It was such a lovely idea.

So is a so used as a conjunction meaning as a result, consequently or in order that, e.g.

An opinion essay

in the first paragraph, the author

It is submitted that the above
explanations are sufficient to
justify the use of the word "and"
in the above.

is followed by a gerund

You can start the final
 Paragraph with "Therefore,"
 "As a result," "Consequently," or
 "Accordingly." The drug of your

Biometric technology will make the world a safer place. Do you agree?

payment and ID cards because I think it will dramatically reduce crime.

4. Firstly, believe that biometric payment cards are for safer than ordinary ones. Only the person whose physical characteristics match those of the cardholder can use it. Therefore, there will be no point stealing people's

Secondly, biometric ID cards will put an end to the

Age Group	Percentage
18-24	10
25-34	20
35-44	25
45-54	20
55-64	15
65-74	10
75-84	5
85+	5

[illegible]

1. The first step is to identify the problem. This involves understanding the current situation and what needs to be changed.

1. 1990年12月，中国工商银行总行在天津成立第一家城市合作银行——天津城市合作银行。

to the bank the proceeds
of the sale and the
amount of the loan.

ከጋራ ጋር ለሰላም ማሳካት ማሳሰብ

End your essay by repeating your overall opinion.

When we compare things, we use *much* and *a lot* to talk about a big difference and *a bit* and *a little* to talk about a small difference, e.g.

Biometric passports are much / a lot harder to fake

To add variety, we can also use words and expressions like *for, considerably, a great deal*, etc. to indicate a big difference, e.g.

Planes are for / a great deal safer than cars.

For d are a small Here we use a slightly eg

A for and against essay

Getting a piercing and a tattoo

Body piercing has existed in many cultures for hundreds of years but celebrities like Johnny Depp and Britney Spears have helped to make it very fashionable in recent times. It is possible to have anything and everything pierced, from your ears, nose, eyebrows and tongue to your knees, ankles and toes.

So why have a piercing? Well, some people feel as if they do with a tattoo that body piercing are a way of expressing their individuality and making a statement. In some cultures, people have body piercing done for spiritual or religious reasons. And, just but not least, many people simply think they're very beautiful and eye-catching.

However, body piercing has risks. First of all, if the instruments are not properly sterilised, there could be a danger of infection and of getting HIV, hepatitis or tetanus. There may also be complications caused by poor quality jewellery which can provoke a serious allergic reaction in some people. Added to these potential problems is the fact that it can actually be very painful to have a piercing done.

Society's attitudes to body piercing are still very conservative. Having an obvious piercing might cause people to judge you negatively, just on your appearance. Given all the possible risks and consequences, the view that young people should think very carefully before having a body piercing done.

You can use the repetition of 'from' or 'where' to give more emphasis, e.g. 'I'm not going to get anything pierced from anywhere but my ears.'

Using a word such as 'just' or 'only' can make your statement more definite. Make sure the sentence is not too long and is easy to read.

Remember to use the correct tense when using a participle.

Remember to use the correct tense when using a participle.

Remember to use the correct tense when using a participle.

In an essay, use formal and fairly neutral language even when giving your own opinion.

We generally use *if anything*, *anybody*, *anyone* and *anywhere* in negative sentences and questions, e.g.

I didn't get anything to eat all day.

Has anybody seen my sister?

We also use *any*, *anything*, etc. in sentences that clearly have a negative meaning, e.g.

He lost his job and was left without any money.

She refused to say anything to the police.

Finally, we use *any*, *anything*, *anybody*, *anyone* and *anywhere* to indicate that it doesn't matter which, what, who or where.

You can have anything pierced (it doesn't matter which part of your body).

The car was unlocked. Anybody could have stolen it.

Give your article a catchy title

1. *የጥንታዊ የግብርና ጥናት*
 2. *የጥንታዊ የግብርና ጥናት*

aspects - or vice versa - of your topic

Further arguments are given for the

to the US, so when you give you
own country of the world, and



- I'm seventeen years old and I don't have a mobile phone. Had one when I was ten and never used it. Even though my parents have been offering to buy me a new one ever since, I have consistently said 'no thanks'.

Why don't I want one? Because I'm fed up with listening to people using their phones in public places, going on and on in incredibly loud voices about absolutely dull things. People who do this look stupid and I don't want to look stupid.

- In addition, I get quite annoyed when my friends start checking the internet when we're talking to each other. I think it's very rude. My real friends don't do it anymore because I insist that they don't. As a result, life is great when we're together!

- Having said that, I'm aware of all the arguments in favour of mobile phones. My parents always worry when I'm out - they would prefer to be able to call me. Thankfully, they have accepted my position, although they're very reluctant about it. My friends complain that they can't get in touch if I'm going to be late to meet them. I'm never late, so what they really mean is - 'I want to be able to call you when I'm late'.

In spite of all the arguments in favour, remain firmly opposed to mobile phones. Phone conversations should be private. I love chatting with friends when I'm sitting comfortably, alone in my room.

Define

1. 2019 年 12 月 31 日，甲公司“应付账款”科目贷方余额为 100 万元，其中 80 万元为 3 个月以上的应收账款。2020 年 1 月 1 日，甲公司“应付账款”科目贷方余额为 120 万元，其中 90 万元为 3 个月以上的应收账款。2020 年 1 月 31 日，甲公司“应付账款”科目贷方余额为 110 万元，其中 85 万元为 3 个月以上的应收账款。2020 年 2 月 28 日，甲公司“应付账款”科目贷方余额为 105 万元，其中 80 万元为 3 个月以上的应收账款。2020 年 3 月 31 日，甲公司“应付账款”科目贷方余额为 100 万元，其中 75 万元为 3 个月以上的应收账款。2020 年 4 月 30 日，甲公司“应付账款”科目贷方余额为 95 万元，其中 70 万元为 3 个月以上的应收账款。2020 年 5 月 31 日，甲公司“应付账款”科目贷方余额为 90 万元，其中 65 万元为 3 个月以上的应收账款。2020 年 6 月 30 日，甲公司“应付账款”科目贷方余额为 85 万元，其中 60 万元为 3 个月以上的应收账款。2020 年 7 月 31 日，甲公司“应付账款”科目贷方余额为 80 万元，其中 55 万元为 3 个月以上的应收账款。2020 年 8 月 31 日，甲公司“应付账款”科目贷方余额为 75 万元，其中 50 万元为 3 个月以上的应收账款。2020 年 9 月 30 日，甲公司“应付账款”科目贷方余额为 70 万元，其中 45 万元为 3 个月以上的应收账款。2020 年 10 月 31 日，甲公司“应付账款”科目贷方余额为 65 万元，其中 40 万元为 3 个月以上的应收账款。2020 年 11 月 30 日，甲公司“应付账款”科目贷方余额为 60 万元，其中 35 万元为 3 个月以上的应收账款。2020 年 12 月 31 日，甲公司“应付账款”科目贷方余额为 55 万元，其中 30 万元为 3 个月以上的应收账款。

1. 1971-1972
 2. 1973-1974
 3. 1975-1976
 4. 1977-1978
 5. 1979-1980
 6. 1981-1982
 7. 1983-1984
 8. 1985-1986
 9. 1987-1988
 10. 1989-1990
 11. 1991-1992
 12. 1993-1994
 13. 1995-1996
 14. 1997-1998
 15. 1999-2000
 16. 2001-2002
 17. 2003-2004
 18. 2005-2006
 19. 2007-2008
 20. 2009-2010
 21. 2011-2012
 22. 2013-2014
 23. 2015-2016
 24. 2017-2018
 25. 2019-2020
 26. 2021-2022
 27. 2023-2024
 28. 2025-2026
 29. 2027-2028
 30. 2029-2030
 31. 2031-2032
 32. 2033-2034
 33. 2035-2036
 34. 2037-2038
 35. 2039-2040
 36. 2041-2042
 37. 2043-2044
 38. 2045-2046
 39. 2047-2048
 40. 2049-2050
 41. 2051-2052
 42. 2053-2054
 43. 2055-2056
 44. 2057-2058
 45. 2059-2060
 46. 2061-2062
 47. 2063-2064
 48. 2065-2066
 49. 2067-2068
 50. 2069-2070
 51. 2071-2072
 52. 2073-2074
 53. 2075-2076
 54. 2077-2078
 55. 2079-2080
 56. 2081-2082
 57. 2083-2084
 58. 2085-2086
 59. 2087-2088
 60. 2089-2090
 61. 2091-2092
 62. 2093-2094
 63. 2095-2096
 64. 2097-2098
 65. 2099-2100
 66. 2101-2102
 67. 2103-2104
 68. 2105-2106
 69. 2107-2108
 70. 2109-2110
 71. 2111-2112
 72. 2113-2114
 73. 2115-2116
 74. 2117-2118
 75. 2119-2120
 76. 2121-2122
 77. 2123-2124
 78. 2125-2126
 79. 2127-2128
 80. 2129-2130
 81. 2131-2132
 82. 2133-2134
 83. 2135-2136
 84. 2137-2138
 85. 2139-2140
 86. 2141-2142
 87. 2143-2144
 88. 2145-2146
 89. 2147-2148
 90. 2149-2150
 91. 2151-2152
 92. 2153-2154
 93. 2155-2156
 94. 2157-2158
 95. 2159-2160
 96. 2161-2162
 97. 2163-2164
 98. 2165-2166
 99. 2167-2168
 100. 2169-2170
 101. 2171-2172
 102. 2173-2174
 103. 2175-2176
 104. 2177-2178
 105. 2179-2180
 106. 2181-2182
 107. 2183-2184
 108. 2185-2186
 109. 2187-2188
 110. 2189-2190
 111. 2191-2192
 112. 2193-2194
 113. 2195-2196
 114. 2197-2198
 115. 2199-2200
 116. 2201-2202
 117. 2203-2204
 118. 2205-2206
 119. 2207-2208
 120. 2209-2210
 121. 2211-2212
 122. 2213-2214
 123. 2215-2216
 124. 2217-2218
 125. 2219-2220
 126. 2221-2222
 127. 2223-2224
 128. 2225-2226
 129. 2227-2228
 130. 2229-2230
 131. 2231-2232
 132. 2233-2234
 133. 2235-2236
 134. 2237-2238
 135. 2239-2240
 136. 2241-2242
 137. 2243-2244
 138. 2245-2246
 139. 2247-2248
 140. 2249-2250
 141. 2251-2252
 142. 2253-2254
 143. 2255-2256
 144. 2257-2258
 145. 2259-2260
 146. 2261-2262
 147. 2263-2264
 148. 2265-2266
 149. 2267-2268
 150. 2269-2270
 151. 2271-2272
 152. 2273-2274
 153. 2275-2276
 154. 2277-2278
 155. 2279-2280
 156. 2281-2282
 157. 2283-2284
 158. 2285-2286
 159. 2287-2288
 160. 2289-2290
 161. 2291-2292
 162. 2293-2294
 163. 2295-2296
 164. 2297-2298
 165. 2299-2300
 166. 2301-2302
 167. 2303-2304
 168. 2305-2306
 169. 2307-2308
 170. 2309-2310
 171. 2311-2312
 172. 2313-2314
 173. 2315-2316
 174. 2317-2318
 175. 2319-2320
 176. 2321-2322
 177. 2323-2324
 178. 2325-2326
 179. 2327-2328
 180. 2329-2330
 181. 2331-2332
 182. 2333-2334
 183. 2335-2336
 184. 2337-2338
 185. 2339-2340
 186. 2341-2342
 187. 2343-2344
 188. 2345-2346
 189. 2347-2348
 190. 2349-2350
 191. 2351-2352
 192. 2353-2354
 193. 2355-2356
 194. 2357-2358
 195. 2359-2360
 196. 2361-2362
 197. 2363-2364
 198. 2365-2366
 199. 2367-2368
 200. 2369-2370
 201. 2371-2372
 202. 2373-2374
 203. 2375-2376
 204. 2377-2378
 205. 2379-2380
 206. 2381-2382
 207. 2383-2384
 208. 2385-2386
 209. 2387-2388
 210. 2389-2390
 211. 2391-2392
 212. 2393-2394
 213. 2395-2396
 214. 2397-2398
 215. 2399-2400
 216. 2401-2402
 217. 2403-2404
 218. 2405-2406
 219. 2407-2408
 220. 2409-2410
 221. 2411-2412

As a metaphor, it is a simple way of saying the opposite of what has been said and can also be used to introduce contrasting ideas.

inspite of is used for contrasting

We can use the expression on the one hand ... on the other hand to introduce contrasting ideas e.g.

hand, don't really want to spend more hours at the office.

We can also use the second part of the expression, *on the other hand*, on its own, e.g.

I love dogs, but on the other hand, my sister is a real cat lover.

Remember NOT to change the first part of the expression on the one hand, anyway.

NOT

An email giving advice

Write your email in appropriate
way to G. and M.
and with a 100 legging he
and a first name

1. 1980-1981
 2. 1982-1983
 3. 1984-1985

possible advantages of your friend's plan, in this case, counting against it.

the fact that the
document exists and is a document of
the same type.

in the future, regarding your
your opinion. Make sure you
a little more you should
change some things.

• **Don't get ahead with a** _____ **the**
 • **of** _____ **is** _____ **the** _____
 • **are** _____ **the** _____ _____
 • **if** _____ **you** _____ **know** _____ **what** _____ **you** _____ **finally**
 • **decide** _____ **code**

From: Mel
To: Chris
Subject: RE: penguins

46 Chats.

- Thanks for your email. What a surprise! It's typical of you to make a decision on the spur of the moment but I think you should consider this one very carefully before deciding. Here's what I think...

• It would certainly be a wonderful opportunity to visit Antarctica and that's a place which is not easy and not cheap to get to normally. I imagine you'd have some amazing experiences and see some incredible things. I bet you'd be working with some interesting people too. I think people who volunteer for these kinds of things are often really nice. I

→ { But counting penguins? Are you joking? Have you thought about how boring that could be? There are so many of them. And remember how old it can be in Antarctica—temperatures can drop below minus 80 degrees. If you didn't do it, it would be very difficult to get away or come back.

My advice would be to find out a bit more about it before you make your final decision. Why don't you, or all the organizers to ask for more details? How long would it be for? A couple of months would probably be great. Two years could be challenging. Maybe talk to someone who's been out there? They would be able to tell you what it's like first hand.

I hope this helps. Good luck whatever you decide.
All the best,
Max

Write a comma after the person's first name.

When you do something in the spur of the moment, you do it impulsively, without planning it.

146 *Journal of Maritime Law and Commerce*
Vol. 13, No. 1, Winter 1982

You can use the expression `!bet + would (or will)` to ask about possible situations.

You are not a heterosexual
 man or woman
 you're a person

Remember: aduce is uncountable
we cannot say an aduce or some
aduce.

Yo: ar... e... don't you? Ed
/hake... are... up...

from All the best you can also
 run or ride that it is better
 to be on the ground of the
 ground, however, forget and
 the ground with two things

የታሪክ ምዕራፍ ማጠቃለያ

We often use the expression *look forward to* at the end of an email or letter to refer to future contact, or future actions. It can be followed by a noun or an *-ing* form.

I look forward to your next email.

We are looking forward to meeting you next month.

Remember to is a preposition here, so if it is followed by a verb, you have to put the verb in -ing

I look forward to seeing you. NOT I look forward to see you.

We use *look forward to* both in formal and informal writing. We can make the expression less formal by putting it in the continuous form, and by omitting the subject pronoun.

I look forward to your reply (most formal)

I am looking forward to your reply. (slightly less formal)

Looking forward to your reply (most informal)

A story

Start your story with a dramatic opening phrase to catch your readers' attention

In the first paragraph, set the scene for the story.

In subsequent paragraphs, events will happen and you describe what happened.

You can use the present tense inside a narrative, e.g. to tell the plot of a film, but be consistent, not mixing past and present tenses.

You can use the present perfect to explain that you were given something only once something.

Use a range of past tenses to describe the order of events. Imagine the order of the happy events in your story. Happen one before the other.

Famous for a day The day I became a movie star

by Lisa Smith

One day I was in a Hollywood restaurant

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

and I was sitting at a table with a lot of people

We use exclamations and adjectives to make the story more lively.

You can use direct speech to make your story more lively. Remember to use quotation marks.

If your story includes a lot of action, you can use a variety of action verbs to make the story more lively. Remember to use the correct form of the verb.

We use the present perfect to explain that you were given something only once something.

We use the present perfect to explain that you were given something only once something.

We use the present perfect to explain that you were given something only once something.



It is important to use time connectors such as *before* and *after* to make it clear when and in what order the events happened.

We use *before* with the second action in a sequence and we use *after* with the first action in a sequence, e.g.

On the first day of the competition, I was nervous.
After the first day, I felt much better.
Not only that, but I also won the competition.

Many stories also use the expressions *in the end* or *at the end*. *In the end* means finally and is used to end a sequence of events. *At the end* means at the end of something and is used for single events.

In the end, I won the competition.
At the end of the competition, I was very happy.

An article about an event

In the first paragraph, describe what, when, where (sporting event), and place and time was involved.

In the second paragraph, describe what happened, and how the situation developed.

In the third paragraph, explain what happened next.

Use relative clauses to provide additional information about the protagonist(s) of your story.

Football referee gives parrot a red card

Lola is a parrot who likes football. Her owner Marina Kelly regularly takes her to watch her favourite football team, Enfield Athletics. Last weekend, Enfield had an important cup tie against local rivals Rovers Bar.



With the score 0-0, Enfield striker Jim Gallagher was about to score but stopped in his tracks when he heard the referee's whistle.

But referee Barry Gordon had not whistled. He told the players to continue playing, but the scoring chance was lost. Two minutes later the players stopped when they heard the whistle again. When the referee heard someone shout 'Pretty Boy', he decided enough was enough.

'I was only told that a woman in the crowd was whistling and shouting, so I told her to stop,' he explained. 'But she claimed that it was her parrot.' Gordon said he had no choice but to send the parrot off. Enfield won the match 3-2 after extra time.

The referee told Ms Kelly that the parrot was banned from all future matches. 'I've seen it on all the news, it's a shame because it's a shame to throw from the small Enfield stadium,' insisted that she would take no notice of the ban and pulled no punches in her criticism of the referee's decision. 'Banning an innocent parrot is the most stupid thing I have ever heard,' she said. 'Lola loves football and I'll take her to the next match. If they try to stop me entering, I'll stay outside and let Lola fly in and watch it by herself.'

Use the word 'the' to refer to the main characters in your article. Use the word 'the' to refer to the main characters in your article. Use the word 'the' to refer to the main characters in your article.

You can use idioms, in this case sports idioms, to make your article lively. When you stop in your tracks, you suddenly stop what you are doing.

You can use Ms both to address married and unmarried women. If you don't know if a woman is married or not, you should always use Ms.

Use adjectives to describe the protagonist(s) of your story.

You can use the idiom pull no punches - which comes from boxing - to say that you deal with someone or something honestly, without holding anything back.



We often use idioms to express things that cannot be expressed as clearly or as vividly with other words. e.g.

Teaching people to respect the environment is an uphill task (you can easily imagine the effort of climbing up a very steep hill)
All our efforts to save the tiger are no more than a drop in the ocean. (a very small quantity)

We also use idioms as a colourful, more expressive way of describing people. e.g.

My little brother is all fingers and thumbs. (more expressive than 'my little brother is very clumsy')
My father's extremely down to earth. He always gives me more advice than I need. (more expressive than 'he's very balanced and practical')

Many idioms come from jargon - the specialist, technical language used by a group of people, such as sportspeople. Traditionally, Britain was a nation of seafarers, so many idioms are associated with sailors, e.g.

He is currently working as an apprentice, until he learns the ropes.

Be careful when using idioms, only use them when you are certain of their meaning.

USE OF ENGLISH

Word formation

Look again at page 122 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

For questions 1–8, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

You've got mail

You can't live with them, and you can't live without them. Professionally, it is virtually impossible to (0) _____ without an email address today. Most companies will issue one to each new (1) _____ while people starting their own business will almost certainly need to use email. After all, without an email address, how could a business (2) _____ with its customers? Outside work too, the majority of people seem to use emails for (3) _____ interaction.

Of course, emails are extremely (4) _____. They allow rapid communication across large distances, which was previously (5) _____ when writing letters. Emails can be cheaper too, because they allow a (6) _____ in stationery and postage costs. However, not everyone is (7) _____ with the increased use of email. Many people hate the feeling that they must (8) _____ check their accounts for something new, only to find spam or something else unwanted.

SURVIVAL

EMPLOY

COMMUNICATION

SOCIETY

BENEFIT

POSSIBLE


REDUCE

SATISFY

CONSTANT

SPEAKING**Listen-Speak**

Look again at page 123 of your Student's Book. Read *About the test* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

 Listen again to the teacher talking in a Science class. The teacher is talking about a Science assignment. Imagine that your classmate was not in class today. Write what you would say to your classmate, explaining what the Science teacher asked the students to do. Be sure to write about the following.

- brain
- Washoe
- first draft

READING

Matching key words and phrases

Look again at page 124 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

You are going to read five school reports written by a class teacher. For questions 1–10, choose from sections A–E. The sections may be chosen more than once.

A Student: Jill Maxwell

This term, Jill's academic work has improved in many ways. Her work in Mathematics, English and Science classes has usually been of a high quality with the exception of one Biology test, for which she received a surprisingly low score. Jill can be relied on to arrive for class and hand in homework punctually and her attitude towards academic work pleases all her teachers. Alongside this, she seems to interact well with other students and appears to have many friends in the various sports clubs she has joined.

B Student: Khaled Saleh

Khaled's academic performance is outstanding and he has obtained very impressive marks for every test this term. He seems to particularly excel in the sciences, with exceptional results achieved in both Biology and Chemistry. However, it would be good if Khaled could contribute more to discussions in class. At present, his shyness seems to hold him back and this could have a negative impact on his academic and social progress. We would like to encourage him to make more friends by joining one of the many sports or activity clubs that are provided after school. Other students enjoy socializing by playing basketball or chess, for example, and this could help Khaled overcome his shyness.

C Student: David Gardner

This term, David's test scores have improved considerably but there is still some way to go before he realizes his potential. He is obviously a very intelligent student and seems to have no trouble making friends. However, we have the impression that he tends to rely too much on his ability to do things adequately at the last minute. David plays for the football, rugby and cricket teams, and these commitments seem to be getting in the way of his studies. We would like to encourage him to turn his attention towards his studies next term and perhaps to drop at least one of his sporting activities.

D Student: Angela Lee

Angela has received excellent results for some of her tests, and although her performance in the History exam was poor she has been working hard to address her weakness in this area. Angela participates very well in group work and has shown the ability to lead others. In discussion-based activities, she contributes well but her written work requires much improvement, particularly in relation to grammar. We will monitor her progress in this area, but a tutor may become necessary for English if improvements are not made within the first few weeks of next term.

E Student: Kiera Samuelson

Kiera's performance this term has disappointed her teachers. She needs to start submitting homework on time, and there is also much room for improvement when it comes to attendance. Although she has only missed two full days, Kiera regularly arrives two or three minutes after classes have begun. To the irritation of her teachers, she often ignores instructions and distracts other students by starting discussions about topics that are irrelevant to the class. On the other hand, Kiera has impressed her basketball coach with her ability to work as part of a team. We hope that she can apply this attitude inside the classroom.

According to the teacher's reports, which student ...

- 1 has received a poor result in a Biology test?
- 2 is often late for class?
- 3 may need a tutor for extra help with English?
- 4 has received excellent results for every test?
- 5 contributes to discussions in class?
- 6 always submits homework on time?
- 7 plays for the school's basketball team?
- 8 has leadership skills?
- 9 focuses too much on sport?
- 10 is too shy?

LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Academic talk

Look again at page 125 of your Student's Book. Read About the test and the Tip. Then do the task below.

Listen to a teacher giving a classroom talk. Then answer the questions.

- 1 What is the main topic of the talk?
 - A why the number of CCTV cameras is increasing
 - B advantages and drawbacks of CCTV cameras
 - C how the police should use CCTV cameras
 - D criminals responses to CCTV cameras
- 2 Which of the following effects of CCTV cameras does the speaker NOT mention?
 - A politicians gain popularity
 - B criminals are identified
 - C some people feel safer
 - D drivers are more careful
- 3 According to the speaker, having more CCTV cameras
 - A criminals can communicate better.
 - B the general public don't need to worry about security.
 - C criminals could use the information from them to commit more crimes.
 - D people are safer.
- 4 Which of the following statements would the speaker agree with?
 - A More CCTV cameras are required in downtown areas
 - B There should be more CCTV cameras in busy suburban neighborhoods.
 - C CCTV cameras do not change people's behavior.
 - D Spending more money on education could reduce crime levels.

LISTENING**Listening for specific information**

Look again at page 126 of your Student's Book. Read About the exam and the Tip. Then do the task below.

- 42 You will hear a man talking about a small country called Andorra. For questions 1–10 complete the sentences with a word or short phrase.

Andorra

Andorra is one of Europe's smallest micro-states. It borders France and Spain, and its official language is (1) _____.

It has two monarchs, who are known as Co-Princes, and a population of approximately (2) _____.

Andorra is a relatively wealthy country and its major industry is (3) _____.

The country (4) _____ a member of the European Union.

Since (5) _____ Andorra has been a member of the United Nations.

Andorra is famous for

(6) _____ which is among the highest in the world.

Because of the mountainous terrain there are many (7) _____ which are popular with tourists from around the world.

It is recommended that visitors to Andorra buy (8) _____.

In 19, 6, Andorra participated in the (9) _____.

Andorra has inspired many artists and in 1962 (10) _____ released a song called Andorra.

READING COMPREHENSION

Academic text: Narrative (Story)

Look again at page 127 of your Student's Book. Read About the test and the Tip. Then do the exam task below.

Read the article and then answer the questions that follow.

"I don't want to talk about it," Stephen said when asked why he had changed his route home from school. "We have the same afternoon classes so I noticed when he started walking home a different way."

"Oh, OK, but I was just wondering if you'd moved," replied the always used to walk down Maple Street."

"No, haven't moved, just prefer to go down Weston Road now," he explained. "It's nicer. But I was skeptical. I knew walking home via Weston Road would take me much longer and I live on a very pleasant street."

"I wonder if he's being bullied on Maple Street," thought to myself. So I decided that on my way home walking down Maple Street that afternoon the only unusual thing I noticed was a group of pigeons eating bread in the front yard. There was an old man watching them from his window. The next day I asked Stephen, "You're not afraid of pigeons, are you?" He looked at his face for a moment, "No, he was."

"I wanted to laugh, but then I remembered something. I used to be really afraid of spiders. When I was younger, I would run out of the house screaming whenever I saw one and wouldn't return until my father had taken it. You know it's OK if you are. We're not afraid of different things," said Stephen.

"There's an old man in that house who started to feed them every day, so now they're always there. Just into the way they move," he explained. "I never know which way they're going. I'm scared they might fly into me."

"I have you ever been very close to one or fed one?" asked his mother. "That's like a spider walking on my hand! Was how I had overcome my own fear." "No," he said. "That would be horrible."

"I think you should get them, kissing them would make you more comfortable around them," said his mother.

It took a lot of persuading, but I managed to get Stephen to come with me down Maple Street the next day. We watched the pigeons for a while so that he could see how they moved. I saw the old man watching us from his window.

"We went again the next day and the old man came out. He asked if we'd like to give the pigeons some bread. The man could see Stephen was afraid, so he held out his hand with some bread on it and a pigeon took it from him. Then I did the same and gradually Stephen came a little closer too. The man said, 'Look, you try it. Here's some bread.'"

Stephen held out his hand with some bread on it and the pigeon took it from him. He smiled and said, "This isn't so bad after all." He now walks home down Maple Street again and sometimes he takes some bread with him to feed the pigeons.

1 What would be an appropriate title for this article?

- A Confronting bullies
- B Facing your fears
- C Avoiding pigeons
- D Taking a new route

2 Why did Stephen say, "I don't want to talk about it"?

- A He was rushing home
- B He didn't know the writer
- C He was embarrassed
- D He didn't like the writer

3 On line 7, what does "skeptical" mean?


- A doubtful
- B impressed
- C surprised
- D pleased

4 Why does the writer mention spiders?

- A because spiders are dangerous too
- B as an example of his father's actions
- C to show he also had an irrational fear
- D because they are comfortable around humans

LISTENING**Matching multiple statements**

Look again at page 128 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

 You will hear five short extracts in which people are talking about online shopping. For questions 1–5 choose from the list A–H what each speaker said about online shopping. Use the letters only once. There are three extra statements which you do not need to use.

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| A Online shopping allows customers to save money | Speaker 1 |
| B City planners need to respond more quickly to new shopping trends | Speaker 2 |
| C Traditional shop owners are having problems and jobs are being lost | Speaker 3 |
| D Online shopping is creating a less sociable society | Speaker 4 |
| E Hackers make online shopping unsafe | Speaker 5 |
| F Online shopping is increasingly popular | |
| G Customer reviews are the best thing about online shopping | |
| H Online shopping is unsuitable for elderly people | |

Opinion

Write a paragraph expressing your opinion on the following topic. You will have 10 minutes to plan and write your response. Be sure to include reasons and examples to support your opinion. Write in complete sentences. When you are finished writing, check your response for grammar, spelling, and punctuation. Your paragraph should be between 100 and 150 words long.

Some people think that students should not have cell phones in school. Other people think that cell phones should be allowed in schools. What do you think?

1. **Introduction:** The document discusses the importance of maintaining accurate records of all transactions, including sales, purchases, and expenses, for financial reporting and tax purposes. It emphasizes the need for a systematic approach to record-keeping and the use of appropriate accounting methods.

2. **Record-Keeping Requirements:** The document outlines the specific requirements for maintaining records, including the need to retain records for a minimum of seven years. It also discusses the importance of keeping records in a clear, legible, and accessible format, such as electronic files or physical documents.

3. **Accounting Methods:** The document discusses the different accounting methods available, including the cash method and the accrual method. It explains the differences between these methods and the implications for financial reporting and tax treatment.

4. **Financial Reporting:** The document discusses the importance of preparing accurate financial statements, including the balance sheet, income statement, and cash flow statement. It emphasizes the need for transparency and accuracy in reporting financial information to stakeholders.

5. **Tax Implications:** The document discusses the tax implications of various transactions and the importance of keeping accurate records to support tax reporting. It also discusses the need to consult with a tax professional for advice on complex tax issues.

6. **Conclusion:** The document concludes by reiterating the importance of maintaining accurate records and the need for a systematic approach to record-keeping. It encourages businesses to implement robust record-keeping practices to ensure compliance with financial reporting and tax requirements.

READING

Putting the sentences back into a text

Look again at page 130 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

You are going to read an extract from an article about culture shock. Six sentences have been removed from the article. Choose from the sentences A–G the one which fits each gap (1–6). There is one extra sentence which you do not need to use.

Culture shock

Sara Williams describes the stages of culture shock and gives advice on how to solve the problems that people often experience when they move to a culture very different from their own.

Moving to a new country can be exciting, but it can also be very challenging. While all the new sights, sounds, foods and people can stimulate your senses, these new experiences can also cause sensory overload. People moving abroad to work or study or simply traveling for tourism often suffer from culture shock, which, unlike the jet lag they may also feel, is not a condition that usually passes quickly. Having a feeling of disorientation due to the new unfamiliar culture that surrounds them, these people experience severe discomfort within their surroundings and may become deeply homesick.

Culture shock is sometimes divided into four stages.

1 They may initially love learning about the food, people and traditions of their new home. However, this experience soon passes and a period of frustration begins. At this time, differences between their old and new cultures begin to cause anxiety.

The frustration is followed by adjustment to the new culture. 2 Then, the final stage is successful adaptation or mastery, where individuals become able to participate comfortably within their new environment. This is the time when culture shock can be said to truly pass.

People who move abroad to study often experience culture shock. Their academic courses can last up to four years and during this time it is quite natural that they feel disoriented at some point. 3 Although this isolation may feel more comfortable than the outside world, it will prevent them from adapting to their new culture. However, because they are usually relatively young, international students tend to experience less severe culture shock than older people, and social isolation is rare among the young.

Unlike international students, people who move abroad to work may not have a fixed date for return. 4 For

more experienced workers, the technology gap is another factor that can contribute to negative psychological effects. Technologies may be used in different ways in the two cultures, and adapting to a new way of using technologies can be challenging, alongside dealing with the language barrier and new dietary habits.

To deal with culture shock, it is recommended that people work hard to establish a new, fixed routine. 5 Anxiety usually prevents people from enjoying their new culture and making friends, and having a routine can prevent people becoming too anxious.

This new routine should include regular attempts to learn about the new culture, as this will lead to moving more quickly to the mastery stage of culture shock. 6 Although this is the most difficult aspect of culture shock to overcome, without doing this it will be near impossible to adapt successfully to life within new surroundings, as communication is such an essential part of life.

- A In severe cases, students may constantly stay in their room away from other people.
- B This can increase feelings of anxiety and stress.
- C Although this may involve acquiring new habits, such as eating new foods or travelling in new ways, a regular pattern of doing things can create stability.
- D People learn about what is expected in different situations and during this phase they may begin to actively study the language and history of their new culture.
- E However, there will always be some people for whom the experience of culture shock is too great and they are unable to deal with the stresses involved in living or working in a country which is very different from their own.
- F At first, during the honeymoon phase, people see the differences between their old and new cultures in a very positive light.
- G Also, making an effort to learn the local language is essential.

LANGUAGE FORM AND MEANING

Look again at page 131 of your Student's Book. Read *About the test* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

For questions 1–8, read the text and choose the correct letters A, B, C, or D.

- 1 Around the world, many people are A known C understanding
B familiar D recognize with the sport ice hockey.
 - 2 It is A a team played sport C a team sport played
B a sport team played D a teams sport played in many places, especially Northern Europe.
 - 3 Canada, and the United States. Although ice hockey A originate C originally
B origins D originated in Europe, it was first
 - 4 popularized in Montreal, Canada. The first organized game A has played on C was played on
B has played D was played
 - 5 Hockey Association of Canada, A which C there
B where D that organized games all around the country.
 - 6 Meanwhile A it believed that C it is believed that
B it is that believed D it is believes that the first ice hockey game in the United States
 - 7 the National Hockey League (NHL), which is A joined C held
B featured D composed of 23 American teams and
 - 8 seven Canadian teams. The NHL's A the most successful team C team most successful
B most successful team D the successful team is the
- Montreal Canadiens; they are also the longest continuously operating team in the world.

USE OF ENGLISH

Choosing the right word

Look again at page 131 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

For questions 1–8, read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR EXAMINATION CANDIDATES

After you have (1) _____ an examination room, you are not allowed to talk to other examination candidates. Anyone who is heard speaking will be asked to leave the room, and they may not be able to return to take their exam.

There will be a poster with information that (2) _____ you where you should sit. Before taking your seat, (3) _____ up your coats and jackets on the racks next to the door, and leave your bags beneath them.

Once seated, you cannot open your test paper until the exam invigilator has let you (4) _____ that the test has begun. During the test, although there will be a large clock (5) _____ at the front of the room, you are also permitted to bring your own watch. However, this must be (6) _____ on your table, instead of worn on your wrist. The only other items allowed on your desk are pens, an eraser and


a bottle of water. During the exam, if you have any questions, (7) _____ your hand and the invigilator will come to you.

Special arrangements can be made for certain candidates. If you have any special requirements, such as a computer or a large-print exam paper, you will need to fill (8) _____ a request form at least two weeks prior to the start of your examinations.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|--------------|------------|
| 1 A entered | B gone | C walked | D arrived |
| 2 A says | B tells | C speaks | D writes |
| 3 A hang | B put | C attach | D fix |
| 4 A understood | B believe | C realize | D know |
| 5 A visible | B watchable | C detectable | D viewable |
| 6 A stood | B installed | C placed | D planted |
| 7 A raise | B lift | C rise | D hold |
| 8 A off | B on | C at | D out |

WRITING**Listen-Write**

Look again at page 133 of your Student's Book. Read *About the test* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

 You will hear a short talk in a Geology class. The teacher is talking about ways to measure temperature. You will hear the talk only once. You may take notes as you listen. You will then be asked a question about the talk. You will have 10 minutes to write your response.

Write a paragraph that explains three different ways to measure temperature. Be sure to include as many details as possible in your answer. Write in complete sentences. When you are finished writing, check your response for grammar, spelling, and punctuation. You have 10 minutes to write your response.

How is temperature measured?

- Instrumental method
- Tropospheric method
- Proxy method

WRITING**Writing a report**

Look again at page 134 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

Your school has a new lunch cafeteria, which has been open for a month. Although it sells some tasty food, many students have been complaining about it. As class representative, you have been asked to write a report for your head teacher, who wants to improve the new cafeteria. You should comment on the food, the prices, the facilities and anything else you consider relevant.

Write your report in 140–180 words.

SPEAKING**Academic Listen-Speak**

Look again at page 135 of your Student's Book. Read *About the test* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

43 Listen again to the teacher talking in a Science class. The teacher is talking about the panda of central China. Write what you would say about the panda of central China after listening to the talk. Be sure to include as many details as you can about the following topics:

- appearance
- behavior
- life cycle
- panda protection

WRITING

Writing an essay

Look again at page 136 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

in your English class, you have been talking about how much unhealthy food young people eat. Now, your teacher has asked you to write an essay. Write an essay using all the notes and giving reasons for your point of view.

Essay question

Only people over the age of 16 should be allowed to buy fast food.

Do you agree?

Write about

- 1 the popularity of fast food
- 2 the positive effects of a healthy diet
3. (your own idea)

Write your essay in 140–180 words.

READING COMPREHENSION

Academic text

Look again at page 137 of your Student's Book. Read About the test and the Tip. Then do the task below.

Read the text, and then answer the questions that follow.

For a journalist, writing an obituary is never an easy thing to do, whether it is about a famous person for a national publication or a local person for a smaller number of readers. This form of writing involves many difficult decisions about what to include and what to exclude. Obituaries are primarily news articles that summarize the life of someone who has recently passed away. They are traditionally published in a newspaper, but many after someone has died, but nowadays they may appear online within hours of the death.

A journalist who writes an obituary will have a limited number of words to summarize a whole lifetime. They must make decisions about what time about what information their readers will want to know. They must also consider the feelings of the deceased's family, who will be coming to terms with the recent death. Skillful writers can write out without offense to sadness of others, people who have loved the deceased.

When writing the obituary of a famous person, a journalist must include an account of their professional achievements along with details of their home lives. For example, when writing about a famous actor who has recently died, a journalist must not just list the movies and films they have won. Readers typically want to know who they were as well as what they really were away from the public eye. A journalist's work is also to include descriptions of any failures or other famous people have experienced as well as their successes.

In the modern world, people expect to receive news instantly. Therefore many news organizations will prepare obituaries of famous people in advance before these people actually die. News providers want to be the first to release an obituary because this allows them to attract more readers and advertisers. However, prematurely releasing obituaries can cause great embarrassment. For example, in 2012, a number of obituaries of the musician Paul Reed were accidentally released following rumors of his death, but he did not in fact die until 2013.

1 What is the passage about?

- A the successful lives of famous people
- B different forms of journalism
- C a particular form of writing
- D an athlete who has died

2 Why do journalists find obituaries difficult to write?

- A Journalists feel sadness when they are writing.
- B They require a large number of words.
- C Information must be summarized quickly and carefully.
- D They will be published in newspapers and online.

3 Which of the following is NOT true of obituaries?

- A They are summaries of positive and negative experiences.
- B They include information about family.
- C They are only written about famous people.
- D They are usually published soon after someone has died.

4 In paragraph 4, what does prematurely mean?

- A too early
- B before others
- C quickly
- D too slowly

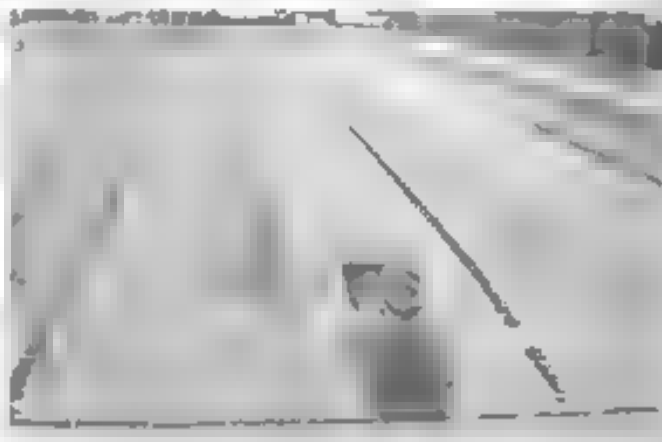
SPEAKING

Describing a photograph

Look again at page 138 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

Choose one of the pairs of photos below and write what you would say about them.

Compare the photographs and say what the people might enjoy about swimming in places like these.



Compare the photographs and say which sport you think is more difficult to learn.



LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Short conversations

Look again at page 139 of your Student's Book. Read *About the test* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

 Listen to two students talking. Then answer the questions.

1 Why is the girl's father going to buy the tablet?

- A so she can use it for watching videos
- B so she can do homework on it
- C so she can make music on it
- D so she can use it as a diary

2 Which factor does the boy NOT tell the girl she should think about?

- A the tablet's storage capacity
- B the tablet's color
- C the tablet's size
- D the tablet's manufacturer

3 Which tablet size does the boy probably think the girl should get?

- A 15 inch
- B 10 inch
- C 8 inch
- D 7 inch

4 When is the girl likely to receive the tablet from her father?

- A tomorrow
- B next week
- C next month
- D today

UNIT 1

bored
boring
confused
confusing
deadline
disturbed
disturbing
effective
exam
fail
get by
go over
information
inspired
inspiring
irritated
irritating
long-term
look up
material
memory
moved
moving
pass
process
recycle
relaxed
relaxing
short-term
strategy
take in

test
think through
uplifted
uplifting

UNIT 2

big
boredom
challenge
cold
collision
cope with
deep
dehydration
desert
dilemma
dry
equipment
exhaustion
experience
exposure
fest
flooding
frostbite
give up
glacier
goal
hard
hot
isolation
journey
jungle

keep up
loud
navigation
ocean
protection
see
set out
setback
smell
storm
strong
sunburn
take on
taste
touch
voyage
weigh
wide
young

UNIT 3

architect
book writer
border
break away
break out
break up
citizen
competitor
consultant
democracy
demonstration

economist
 election
 employee
 employer
 European
 German
 get through
 go on
 government
 guard
 independence
 kingdom
 lawyer
 leader
 monarchy
 musician
 parliament
 party
 pianist
 president
 prime minister
 refugee
 regime
 republic
 resident
 revolution
 riot
 sculptor
 state
 student
 survivor
 trainee
 trainer

trouble
 vagabond
 winner

UNIT 4

bar
 biometric information
 bill
 bunch
 capture
 closed circuit television
 computer chip
 detect
 drop
 flock
 group
 hear about
 hear from
 hear of
 herd
 identify
 identity card
 iris recognition
 listen in on
 listen out for
 monitor
 packet
 pair
 part
 piece
 radio frequency identification
 scan

scrutinize
 slice
 speck
 spy on
 survey
 swarm
 tribe

UNIT 5

anaesthetic
 cosmetic
 cure
 enlarge
 ethical
 fit in
 get a cup of tea
 get a present (for someone)
 get a tattoo
 get a visa
 get an email
 get an impression
 get bigger
 get breakfast
 get bullied
 get cold
 get cosmetic surgery
 get facts
 get fined
 get here
 get home
 get it
 get locked out

Vocabulary Bank

get nightmares
get tickets
incision
infection
inject
intervention
look like
needle
operating theatre
perform
pin back
procedure
put up with
reconstruct
recover
reduce
remove
replace
reshape
scalpel
scissors
stand out
stitches
surgeon
syringe
take after
treat
undergo

UNIT 6

access
account

be corrupted
be infected (with a virus)
be taken in
buffer
clarity
delete
democracy / democratic
electricity / electric / electrical
family / familiar
freeze
get a signal
hack in / into
history / historical
industry / industrious
library
log on / onto
luxury / luxurious
mystery / mysterious
password
pay off
psychology / psychological
remedy / remedial
set up
software
spam email
supply
sync
technology / technological
tendency
theory / theoretical
top up (a phone)
webcam

UNIT 7

agriculture
attack
ban
carry on
conservation
cost
cut down
danger
death
decrease
destruction
development
die out
ecology
environment
export
extinction
farm
farming
feed
hunt
hunting
import
increase
look after
mountain
object
permit
poison
present
protection

record
research
respect
threat
tourism
trade
use
value
wipe out
work

UNIT 8

admit
advise
agree
announce
apologise
blame
blur
blush to the roots of your hair
catch up with
come up with
confess
confirm
deny
down in the dumps
explain
fluff lines
get away with
get hot under the collar
go haywire

hang
like watching paint dry
line up to
offer
out of focus
over the moon
promise
propose
put a spring in your step
recommend
refuse
sick to the back teeth
stand in for
suggest
wake up in a cold sweat
wander

UNIT 9

a messiness
aspiration
ball boy / girl
caddy
cheerleader
coach / trainer
colossal
commentator
contentment
cox
determination
eagerness
energy

enormous
enterprise
fan
giant
gigantic
hope
huge
immense
inference
kick off
manager
massive
mechanic
microscopic
minuscule
minute
monumental
passion
physiotherapist (physio)
put off
referee
reporter
resourcefulness
satisfaction
send off
stadium announcer
stick at
take up
try
umpire

THE BIRTHDAY PRESENT

- 1 Read the story *The Birthday Present* on pages 140–141 of your Student's Book again. Then complete the summary of the story with your own ideas.

This story is set in _____ The main character is _____, who _____

The narrator _____

Most of the action happens _____

The characters _____

They see _____

In the end, _____

- 2 Write ten words and expressions from the story that you want to learn. Write a record so that you remember them.

Technotrip

- 1 Read the story *Technotrip* on pages 142–143 of your Student's Book again. Then complete the summary of the story with your own ideas.

The main character of this story is _____

At the start of the story, _____

He feels _____ because _____

Then, he _____

Suddenly, _____

In the end, _____

I thought this story was _____ because _____

- 2 Write ten words and expressions from the story that you want to learn. Write a record so that you remember them.

The Challenge

- 1 Read the story *The Challenge* on pages 144–145 of your Student's Book again. Then complete the summary of the story with your own ideas.

The main part of this story is set in _____

The main characters go to _____

because _____

While they are there, _____

The final part of the story is set in _____

Steven _____

I thought this story was _____ because _____

- 2 Write ten words and expressions from the story that you want to learn. Write a record so that you remember them.

Workbook

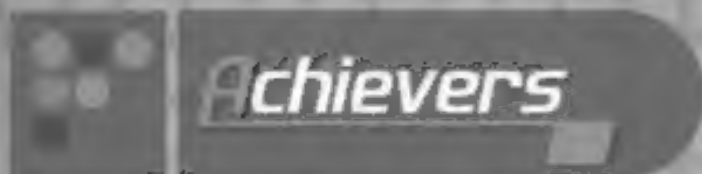
Achievers

B2

Margie Lemmens



Richmond



Achievers is an engaging six-level English course matched to the CEFR which aims to motivate and challenge teenage students throughout the language learning process.

With its ambitious vocabulary and grammar syllabus and thorough skills development, **Achievers** prepares students to use and enjoy English at every level, and to succeed in the **Cambridge English: Key, Preliminary, First** and **Advanced** exams and in the **TOEFL Junior®** test.

For the Student

Student's Book

- **Integrated exam training** to prepare students for Cambridge and TOEFL® tests
- Focus on **natural spoken language** and contemporary and idiomatic expressions
- **Unique Challenge lessons** with an ambitious extended speaking task
- **Fast Finisher activities** to keep challenging the strongest students
- **Audiovisual material** to open the door to English-speaking culture worldwide

Workbook

- A page of practice for each Student's Book page
- Key language extended in new vocabulary sections in each unit
- Communication skills reinforcement with listening and speaking activities
- Additional **Audiovisual material** sections
- Downloadable Workbook audio

For the Teacher

Teacher's Book

- Includes all Student's Book pages
- Unit overview for quick lesson plans
- Complete teaching notes, transcripts and answer keys

Teacher's Resource Book

- Tests at two levels for every unit, plus end-of-term and end-of-year tests
- Vocabulary and Grammar worksheets at two levels
- Speaking worksheets for fun communicative activities
- Festivals worksheets

Teacher's Audio Material

Teacher's i-book for smartboards

- A complete digital version of the course with instant access to audio, transcripts and answer keys

